

MANUEL DOS SANTOS







SuperGoal 3 Student Book

SuperGoal Series Copyright © 2009 by McGraw-Hill Education

Adaptation Copyright © 2023 by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited

Published by arrangement with McGraw Hill LLC

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. NO PART OF THIS BOOK MAY BE REPRODUCED OR TRANSMITTED IN ANY FORM OR BY ANY MEANS, ELECTRONIC OR MECHANICAL, INCLUDING PHOTOCOPYING, RECORDING OR BY INFORMATION STORAGE AND RETRIEVAL SYSTEMS, WITHOUT PERMISSION IN WRITING FROM MCGRAW HILL.

ISBN: 9781398928503

Publisher: Jorge Rodríguez Hernández Editorial director: Anita Raducanu

Development editors: Ana Laura Martínez Vázquez, Janet Battiste

Art direction: Heloisa Yara Tiburtius Interior design and production: Page2, LLC

Cover design: Page2, LLC Photo coordinator: Kevin Sharpe

Photo Credits: The Photo Credits section for this book on pages 268-269 is considered an extension of the copyright page.

© 2023. Exclusive rights by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited for manufacture and export. This book cannot be re-exported from the country to which it is sold by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited.



Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Contents

			Scope and Sequence	iv
	Unit	1	Lifestyles	2
_	Unit	2	Life Stories	12
Term 1	Unit	3	When Are You Traveling?	22
\vdash	Unit	4	What Do I Need to Buy?	32
			EXPANSION Units 1–4	42
	Unit	5	Since When?	48
~	Unit	6	Do You Know Where It Is?	58
Term 2	Unit	7	It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?	68
<u>H</u>	Unit	8	Drive Slowly!	78
			EXPANSION Units 5–8	88
	Unit	9	EXPANSION Units 5–8 All Kinds of People	94
m	Unit Unit	9		
rm 3			All Kinds of People	94
Term 3	Unit	10	All Kinds of People Who Used My Toothpaste?	94
Term 3	Unit Unit	10 11	All Kinds of People Who Used My Toothpaste? Making Choices	94 104 114
Term 3	Unit Unit	10 11	All Kinds of People Who Used My Toothpaste? Making Choices Culture Shock	94 104 114 124
Term 3	Unit Unit	10 11	All Kinds of People Who Used My Toothpaste? Making Choices Culture Shock EXPANSION Units 9–12	94 104 114 124 134
Term 3	Unit Unit	10 11	All Kinds of People Who Used My Toothpaste? Making Choices Culture Shock EXPANSION Units 9–12 Vocabulary	94 104 114 124 134





Scope and Sequence

	Unit Title	Functions	Grammar
1	Lifestyles Pages 2–11	Talk about lifestyles Talk about habits and routines Talk about frequency of actions	Simple present tense Adverbs/Expressions of frequency Questions with how often/how much/ how long All/both/neither/none
2	Life Stories Pages 12–21	Talk about past actions Relate past events in your life Report what people said Talk about past dates and times	Simple past tense Expressions with the passive, be + born Used to Time expressions for the past When clauses
3	When Are You Traveling? Pages 22-31	Talk about air travel Talk about ongoing actions Talk about plans and future actions	Present progressive Future with <i>going to</i> and <i>will</i> Infinitives of purpose Time clauses: <i>after, as soon as, before,</i> etc. Prepositions of movement
4	What Do I Need to Buy? Pages 32-41	Talk about foods, buying foods, and planning meals Describe quantities Put events in sequence Give and follow directions	Expressions of quantity: a few, a little, a lot of, much, many, enough Pronouns: something, anything, nothing Sequence words: first, then, after that, finally Reflexive pronouns Conjunctions: because, so
	EXPANSION Units 1–4 Pages 42–47	Language Review Writing: Write a report about a Reading: Water for Life	an endangered species
5	Since When? Pages 48-57	Talk about inventions Express actions that have happened recently Express actions that began in the past and continue into the present	Present perfect tense versus simple past Present perfect with for and since Questions with how long Passive—simple present, present perfect, simple past
6	Do You Know Where It Is? Pages 58-67	Talk about quality of life Describe features of places Make comparisons Ask for information	Comparative and superlative forms of adjectives Comparisons with as as Indirect questions Definite article: the

مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 202**4 v** 1444









Listening	Pronunciation	Reading	Writing
Listen for specific details in a lifestyle description	Reduction of <i>do you</i>	Cell Phone Obsession: Negative or Positive?	Write a report about a common habit or pastime among young people in your country Do a group survey on common habits and pastimes (Project)
Listen to a biography and put events in chronological order	used to	The King of Saudi Arabia	Write your life story Write a biography of a famous person (Project)
Listen for specific information in a conversation between travelers	Words ending in <i>-ing</i>	Study Arabic in Saudi Arabia	Write an email to a friend about studying in another country Write a study program for foreign students in your country (Project)
Listen for specific information in a conversation in a supermarket	The <i>sh</i> , <i>ch</i> , and <i>j</i> sounds	Foods from the Americas	Write your favorite recipe Write about a meal with foods from different countries (Project)
	Project: Prepare a campaig Chant Along: What Have T Project: Research an env	hey Done to You?	
Listen for specific information in a conversation	Contractions of <i>have</i>	A History of Special Effects	Write about your most important possessions and how long you've had them Write about the most important invention of the last century (Project)
Listen for specific details in a news story about garbage and recycling	Intonation of direct and indirect questions	The Bride of the Red Sea	Write about the assets and future aims of your city or neighborhood Write about a town or city in your country or the world (Project)

مرارة التعليم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 5 13/4/22 6:44 PM

Scope and Sequence

	Unit Title	Functions	Grammar	
7	It's a Good Deal, Isn't It? Pages 68-77	Talk about common items at a garage sale Confirm information Describe abilities	Tag questions—affirmative, negative Negative questions Be able to Suggestions—Should/can/could and why don't/let's	
8	Drive Slowly! Pages 78–87	Talk about cars, driving, and traffic signs Give advice Express obligation Say how people do things	Modal auxiliaries: must/mustn't/must not and should/shouldn't Adverbs of manner Can/could/will/would Requests and commands Reporting requests and commands	
	EXPANSION Units 5-8 Pages 88-93	Language Review Reading: Adventure Trips Writing: Write a brochure for an a	adventure trip	
9	All Kinds of People Pages 94–103	Talk about past events that are interrupted Describe people's personalities and character	Relative pronouns: who, that, which Past progressive with when and while Can/may/could	
10	Who Used My Toothpaste? Pages 104–113	Describe problems Talk about common complaints Express actions that have happened recently	Present perfect with already, yet, just— questions, answers Verb + gerund Two-word verbs Can't/must Sothat/suchthat	
11	Making Choices Pages 114–123	Express cause and effect Make choices Express preferences	Conditional with present and future forms <i>I'd rather</i> Conditional sentences—imagery situations <i>Wish</i>	
12	Culture Shock Pages 124–133	Describe customs of different cultures Give advice	Verb + infinitive Verb + noun/pronoun + infinitive It's + infinitive Expressions of advice with infinitives Gerunds as subjects Past perfect	
EXPANSION Units 9–12 Pages 134–145		Writing: Write about an occupation Chant Along: Career Path	Reading: Aptitude and IQ: What's the Difference? Writing: Write about an occupation	

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2023**y**: 1444





Listening	Pronunciation	Reading	Writing
Listen to a conversation Rising intonation in tag to explain a questions misunderstanding		You Look Just Like Me!	Write about a strange coincidence or chance meeting Prepare an advertisement for a garage sale (Project)
Listen for specific information in a conversation about driving	Vowel sound /ə/ in should and must	ls Right, Right?	Write an essay about why the driving age should be raised Make a poster with a list of driving tips and safety rules (Project)
	Chant Along: I've Missed You Project: Survey classmates a		cation
Listen to infer who is speaking and match speakers to their pictures	Syllable stress in adjectives	Simple Ideas, Big Results	Write an essay about your vision of schools or your town in the future Present a person who has made a difference in the world (Project)
Listen for specific information in a conversation about home	Vowel sounds followed by <i>r</i>	Complaints	Write about impolite behavior and how it affects others Interview college students to find what they miss about home (Project))
Listen for points of view in a radio interview	Consonant clusters <i>sp, tr, cr, pr, gr</i> in initial position	The Right Choice	Write about choices you have made and their consequences Role-play an interview about a local issue and its positive and negative sides (Project)
Listen for specific details Reduction of to in sentences in travel advice		A Fish Out of Water	Write an email about cultural differences Write advice to travelers to your country (Project)

Reading: Taking a Siesta
Project: Research the benefits of sleep
Chant Along: Assimilating
Writing: Write advice on fitting into a new society



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

1 Lifestyles



1 Listen and Discuss 🕢

What activities do you do every day? Twice a day?

Check Your Lifestyle

Which of the people are you most like? Why?



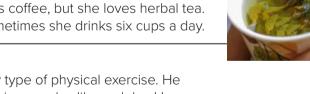


Arthur is really into fitness. He works out at the gym regularly. He runs frequently, and he plays tennis twice a week. From time to time, Arthur goes rock climbing.





Refaa is a health food fanatic. She normally eats vegetarian meals. She hardly ever eats meat. She never drinks coffee, but she loves herbal tea. Sometimes she drinks six cups a day.



John hates any type of physical exercise. He enjoys challenging puzzles like sudoku. He spends most of his free time playing video games or solving puzzles in magazines.

Josh is an Internet addict. He seldom spends less than three hours a day on the computer.

While he schatting online, he often checks his cell phone for text messages.

صياحتاا قرابح Ministry of Education 202**2-** 1444





Noura loves shopping. When she walks into a department store or a mall, she always buys something. She spends a lot of money. But she says



Term

Martin works very hard. He always takes work home from the office, and he rarely takes a vacation. He's really devoted to his job.

Your Profile

Answer the questions about your habits and routines.

How many hours a day do you watch T'	Н
--------------------------------------	---

How long do you talk on the phone a day?

How much money do you spend a week?

How much time do you spend on the Internet?

What two activities do you do very often?

What two activities do you hardly ever do? What activities do you think you overdo?

How often do y	ou exercise?
----------------	--------------

How often do you go shopping?

How many hours a day do you sleep?_

Now compare your answers with a partner.

Quick Check 🗹

- **A. Vocabulary.** Underline words and expressions on pages 2 and 3 that tell about frequency (how often).
- **B.** Comprehension. Answer the questions about the people.
 - **1.** How often does Arthur go rock climbing?
 - 2. How frequently does John exercise?
 - 3. How often does Refaa eat meat?
 - **4.** How long does Josh spend on the Internet?
- 5. How much money does Noura usually spend?
- مراحتا قالة **6.** How often does Martin go on vacation?

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

2 Pair Work 🔀



- A. Ask and answer. Role-play the people in the article.
 - So, Martin, how often do you watch TV?
 - I seldom watch TV. I have no time.
 - Tell me, Noura, how much time do you spend shopping?
 - A lot of time. I shop every weekend.
- **B.** Ask and answer with your information.

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 3 13/4/22 6:44 PM



3 Grammar 👊



Simple Present Tense: Habitual Activities

you usually **drink** coffee? I rarely drink coffee.

He/She drinks coffee now and then. **Does** he/she

Adverbs/Expressions of Frequency

100% of the time 50%-99% 20%-49% 1%-19% 0%



always, all the time usually, generally, normally, frequently, often, regularly sometimes, occasionally, from time to time once in a while, now and then, hardly ever, seldom, rarely never

I rarely eat junk food. I'm usually a salad-and-fruit person.

But I'll eat a piece of pizza once in a while.

- Adverbs of frequency usually come before the verb.
- However, they come after the verb be.
- Expressions such as all the time, now and then, once in a while, twice a week, once a month, every two months usually come at the end of the sentence.
- Some adverbs and expressions can come at the beginning of the sentence.

Sometimes Hameed works late. From time to time, he brings work to do at home.

Questions with How Often/How Much/How Long

Q: How often do you use your cell phone?

Q: How much time do you spend in the shower?

Q: How long do you spend on your homework?

A: I use it 20 times a day.

A: I spend about 5 minutes.

A: I spend about 2 hours every night.

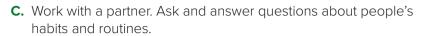
	D			9 1 1	the second second second	
Δ.	Rewrite the	sentences	IN THE ONN	INSITA LISA	THE WORDS	in narentheses

•	Jamal frequently exercises. (seldom)	Jamal seldom exercises.
	1. Ibrahim constantly talks on the phone. (rarely)	
	2. My brother occasionally checks his email. (often)	
	2 Learnetimes ourf on the Internet (ance in a while)	

- **3.** I sometimes surf on the Internet. (once in a while) **4.** Qassim always arrives at work on time. (hardly ever)
- **5.** Maha usually drinks tea instead of coffee. (from time to time)
- **B.** Now ask questions about the people in exercise **A**.

P How often <u>does Jamal exercise</u>	
1. How often	
2. How often	
3. How often	
3. How often	
5. How often	•

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 20224-1444



A: What does Adnan normally do in the evening?

B: He usually studies.

Adnan / normally / evening





1. Faris / generally / for lunch



2. Frank and Ali / occasionally / in the park



3. Emma / seldom / after dinner



4. Ahmed and his family / often / on the weekend



5. Kyle / sometimes / with his friends



5

6. Ben / now and then

- D. How often do you do the activities in exercise C? Write sentences using an adverb or expression of frequency. Compare sentences in small groups.
- I normally get a haircut every two months.
- E. Write sentences about things you usually/always do and you seldom/never do. Write at least two false sentences. Read them to your partner. Can your partner guess which sentences are true and which sentences are false?

ho I usually hang out with my friends at the mall.	True	False
I never watch TV on the weekend.		\checkmark
1		
2		
3		
4.		
5		
يلـــتا قازام 6		

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 5 13/4/22 6:44 PM

Lifestyles



4 Language in Context

- A. Work with a partner. Look at the picture of Tom's room. What can you tell about his lifestyle?
- He usually does his homework on the computer.



B. In what ways is your room like the one above? In what ways is it different?

5 Listening



Listen to Musa, a professional football player, talking about his career and lifestyle. Write true or false.

- **1.** ____ Musa comes from a poor background.
- 2. ____ He spends a lot of time with his family.
- **3.** ____ Musa is proud of playing for his country.
- **4.** ____ He likes to wear fashionable clothes.
- **5.** ____ He gives money to help those in need.
- **6.** _____ Musa doesn't like the media following him.

6 Pronunciation 👺



Listen. Notice how **do** and **you** are said together as one word. Then practice.

Do you have a cell phone? Where do you live?

How often **do you** get a haircut?

How much time **do you** spend on the Internet?

About You



Work in a group. Talk about your pastimes and routines.

How much time do you spend...

on your homework?

on the phone?

on the internet? مارة jin the shower?

shopping? exercising? with your family? with your friends?

Ministry of Education 20226-1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 6









Majid: How often do you go to the gym? **Omar:** I work out every day, except weekends.

I'm a bit of an exercise freak.

Majid: Exercise turns me off.

Omar: Anyway, what are you doing now?

Majid: I'm checking my email.

Omar: How much time do you spend on the

Internet?

Majid: A lot. I take my smartphone with me wherever I go. My friends say that my smartphone is really my best friend. You see, I can access the Internet almost

everywhere.

Real Talk

exercise freak = someone who exercises a lot turn (someone) off = does not interest at all Anyway = a word to introduce a change in topic You see = a phrase to introduce an explanation

About the Conversation

- 1. Does Omar exercise a lot?
- 2. Does exercise turn Majid off?
- 3. Does Majid spend a lot of time on the Internet?



مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Your Ending What do you thin

What do you think Omar answers?

- 1) I prefer to exercise my body, not my thumb.
- 2 I only use my computer to send and receive email.
- 3 I don't have a cell phone. I don't want people calling me all the time.
- (4) Your idea: ___

Your Turn

Interview your partner about Internet use. Use the following prompts:

- **1.** frequency
- 2. number of hours
- **3.** purpose (what for?)
- **4.** type of connection
- **5.** where
- **6.** others: ___

Lifestyles



9 Reading



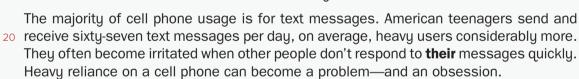
Before Reading

Why do people you know use cell phones? How often do they use them?

CELL PHONE OBSESSION: Negative or Positive?

- 1 Yakkity, yakkity, yak. All around, you hear ring tones of cell phones, and you see people who are talking on the phone in public or sending text messages. This
- 5 use of cell phones may signal more than normal communication with friends and family. For some teenagers, this craze may be a sign of unhappiness and anxiety.
- 10 Cell phones are definitely part of today's youth culture. Ninety-five percent of U.S. teens have access to a smartphone, and soon over 60 percent of kids ages 8 to 12 will have them,
- 15 too. Students in grades 7 through 12 spend an average of more than an hour a day talking on their cell phones.

That's about the same amount of time that they devote to homework.



According to the Los Angeles Times, a survey of 575 high school students in the United States showed that two-thirds of the students who use their cell phones more than 90

- 25 times a day do so because they are unhappy or bored. They score higher on tests that measure depression and anxiety compared to students who use their phones less. However, when they were examined, the frequent users were not found to be clinically depressed—that is, they were not actually in a state of depression that was severe enough to require medical help. The researcher who conducted the study said, "The
- 30 young people may be unhappy because of a problem in their lives or anxious about their social status. They are trying to make themselves feel better by reaching out to others. Communicating via cell phone makes the 'addicts' feel popular."

For teenagers, cell phones are not just objects for communication. They are extensions of themselves. They are tools for keeping in touch. Many teenagers don't agree with the study from the United States, and they say that people who are anxious or depressed wouldn; be sending out messages or making calls. For them, a lot of cell phone use shows that a person is popular and has a lot of friends. What do you think?

وزارة التلح Ministru

20228-1444



Answer true or false.

- **1.** _____ Only one out of every four young Americans owns a cell phone.
- **2.** ____ American students spend a lot more time on the phone than on homework.
- **3.** _____ Most of the cell phone usage is for text messages.
- **4.** People who talk a lot on the phone do so because they are depressed.
- **5.** _____ Some people think that a lot of cell phone use is a positive thing.

Discussion

- A. Discuss the questions.
 - **1.** What do you think about the study from the Los Angeles Times?
 - 2. Do you have a cell phone? If so, how often do you use your cell phone? What for?
 - 3. Approximately how long do you spend on each call?
 - **4.** How much is your monthly cell phone bill?
 - **5.** Discuss the advantages and the disadvantages of cell phones.
- B. Read and discuss.

A recent survey found that 1 to 30 percent of text messages received on cell phones are mobile spam (unwanted commercial advertising). Unlike email spam, some cell phone users may be charged a fee for every incoming message. What do you think can be done to prevent it?

10 Project



Work in groups. Do a survey to find out how often and how long group members spend on the following activities:

on chores on the Internet on homework shopping on a hobby/sport using a cell phone

watching TV other: ___

Discuss and compare results as a class. What habits or pastimes are the most common? On average, how often and how much time do members of the class spend doing them?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444





1 Lifestyles



11 Writing

A. What did you learn about the habits of young people from your class survey? Complete the chart with your findings.

Habit/Pastime	How often?	How long?

Writing Corner

Cohesion is important in writing. Cohesion means the way sentences link together. One way to make writing more cohesive is to use pronouns and possessive adjectives.

- Pronouns and possessive adjectives link ideas in sentences.
 Teenagers who play a sport say they often become friends with their teammates.
- 2. Pronouns help avoid repeating the same word or words.

 Football is popular because it is fun. It has simple rules, so it is easy to learn.
- Pronouns can refer to one word or a group of words.
 Playing a team sport is beneficial because it keeps young people in shape and teaches them about cooperation.

В.	Look back at the	Reading on	page 8. V	What do the	pronouns or	adjectives re	efer to?
----	------------------	-------------------	-----------	-------------	-------------	---------------	----------

- **1.** them (line 14) _____
- **2.** their (line 21)
- **3.** they (line 28) _____
- **4.** who (line 29)
- **5.** their (line 30)
- **6.** They (line 33)
- **7.** themselves (line 34) _____
- **8.** them (line 36)
- **C.** Complete the text with suitable pronouns.

Teenagers in my country are obsessed with (1) ______ computers. The majority of (2) ______ spend an average of two to three hours a day on the computer.

(3) _____ regularly surf the Internet to learn about things that interest (4) _____, and (5) _____ sometimes use

(6) _____ to do research for school. Young people also frequently communicate through social media like Twitter and Facebook. They say that (7) _____ is a great way to keep in touch with (8) _____ friends. There are other teenagers

(9) ____ just prefer to play video games.

For teenagers, the computer is a tool for learning and a means of communication. But most of all, (10) ______ is simply entertaining.



With report about one or more of the most common habits and/or pastimes among young people in your country. Use information from your survey. Remember to use adverbs of frequency and pronouns.

Ministry of Education 2022 16 1444



12 Form, Meaning and Function

All, Both, Neither, None

All / Both / Neither / None + of + object pronoun + verb

Both / Neither refer to two people or two things.

Neither means not one and goes with singular verbs and nouns.

Both of them are teachers. **Neither of them** *is* a math teacher. Both of them teach science. **Neither of them** *teaches* math.

All / None refer to three or more people or things.

None of them are math teachers. **All of them** are teachers.

All of them teach science. None of them teach math.



All / Both

2022 - 1444

All / Both can go after the auxiliary verb (be, can, do, etc.) and before the main verb.

They are **both** teachers. They can **all** speak English. We **both** teach science. We are all having fun.

Are they **both** science teachers? Can they all speak English? Do you **both** teach science? Are you all having fun?



Lifestyle Survey	Noura	Maha	Badria
Are you a vegetarian?	no	no	no
Do you often eat junk food?	no	no	yes
Can you cook?	yes	yes	yes
Do you work out regularly?	yes	yes	no
Do you drink a lot of coffee?	no	no	no

A. Look at the survey. Write sentences about Noura and Maha. Use both or neither.

Nei	ther of them is a vegetarian.
1	
3.	
1	
4. Nov	v write sentences about Noura. Maha. and Badria. Use all. not all . or none .
	v write sentences about Noura, Maha, and Badria. Use all , not all , or none .
1. _	v write sentences about Noura, Maha, and Badria. Use all , not all , or none .
1 2	v write sentences about Noura, Maha, and Badria. Use all , not all , or none .
1	v write sentences about Noura, Maha, and Badria. Use all , not all , or none .

C. Create your own survey with questions about lifestyle. Answer the survey. Then ask two classmates the בון כיון פֿער questions. Write sentences about you and your classmates with *all*, *none*, *both*, and *neither*. Ministry of Education

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 11 13/4/22 6:44 PM





2 Life Stories



Listen and Discuss



Do you have a "People in the News" column in your local newspaper or magazine? What kind of information does it include?

People in the News

THE GIFT OF LIFE



Trent Olsen donated blood for the 100th time on Wednesday, June 23rd. Trent made his first donation at the Red Crescent Mobile Blood Donor Clinic when he was in his 20s. He said, "It started when some colleagues and I saw the mobile clinic parked outside our office. We all decided to give blood. I continued regularly after that because I thought it was the right thing to do. I didn't have a lot of money for charity, so it was my way of helping others." Every eight weeks, Trent makes his next appointment to give blood at the Fairview Clinic. One donation can save up to three lives. : Thank you, Trent!

ATHLETE OF THE YEAR

Congratulations to Ahmed Jamal who was awarded "Athlete of the Year" for his outstanding leadership in sports. Ahmed, 16, received the award from the school principal in a ceremony at Al Marwah High School on Monday evening.

HIS STORY

Ahmed was born with a crippling disease that made it difficult for him to walk. But that didn't stop him from playing his favorite sport – football. Ahmed explained, "I used to love watching AFC games, and my older brother, Ali, played football in high school. When I was 12, he taught me to play in the park. My family really encouraged me, so I got in touch with other kids like me and we formed a team." Ahmed and his team compete

• in the Special Olympics Junior League. He is team captain and this year's

highest scorer. Ahmed is an example to all young athletes.



وزارة التعليم

Ministry of Education

BLUE FLAG FOR SUNSET

Over one hundred employees from local hotels and restaurants gathered at Sunset Beach again on Tuesday for a clean-up operation. The employees combed the beach for plastic bottles, bags, cans, and other litter. Last year, hotel and restaurant owners in the community decided to take responsibility for keeping the beach clean. Their efforts are a big success, and Sunset Beach was awarded the Blue Flag by the Foundation for Environmental Education.



NEWBORN



David and Mary Ann Taylor are the proud parents of twins. Linda and Jenny were born at Newton Maternity Hospital on Monday, June 21st. Mother and infants are in good health. We wish the parents and the babies all the best.

Quick Check 🗹

- **A. Vocabulary.** Find words in the text that mean:
 - 1. gave to charity
 - 2. an arrangement to meet
 - 3. excellent
 - 4. supported someone to succeed
 - 5. got together/met
 - 6. a baby
- **B.** Comprehension. Answer the questions.
 - **1.** Why did Trent continue to give blood?
 - 2. How often does Trent give blood?
 - 3. Why was it difficult for Ahmed to walk?
 - 4. Who taught Ahmed to play football?
 - 5.. Why did the employees gather at the beach?
- **6.** When were the twins born?

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

2 Pair Work 🖼



- A. Ask and answer about the people in the stories.
 - What award did Ahmed receive?
 - He received "Athlete of the Year."
- **B.** Ask and answer about your past.
 - Where were you born?
 - I was born in Madinah.

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 13 13/4/22 6:44 PM

Life Stories



3 Grammar 👊

Simple Past Tense

Yes/No Question (?)

Did you/he/she/they **live** in Riyadh?

Information Questions (?)

Where **did** you/he/she/they **live**? What **did** you/he/she/they **wear**? Where **did** you/he/she/they **work**? Short Answer (+) Short Answer (-)

Yes, I/he/she/they did. No, I/he/she/they didn't.

Answer

I/He/She/They lived in Riyadh. (+) I/He/She/They wore formal clothing. (+) I/He/She/They didn't work in an office. (–)

Be + Born

I was born in Syria. The twins were born on June 21st.

Expressions with the Passive

To be raised, to be married, to be called, to be educated, etc., are commonly used in stories about people's pasts. For the passive in the past, use was/were + past participle.

Michael was raised in Montreal. His parents were married in Tabuk. The team was called The Lions. He was educated in private schools.

Used to

Use used to for past habits and states.

Affirmative (+)

When I was little, I used to play with toys.

Negative (-)

I didn't use to play video games.

Questions (?)

Did you **use to** play with dolls? Yes, I did. / No, I didn't. What **did** you **use to** play with? I **used to** play with toy cars.

A. Make sentences about yourself. Use the phrases, and add some of your own. Share your sentences with a partner.

be born

say my first word at the age of... go to school at the age of... grow up

start walking at the age of...

firşt use a computer at the age of...

وزارة التعطو Ministry of Education



B. List some of the things you **used to do/didn't use to do** when you were young. Then compare and discuss with a partner.

Used to Do	Didn't Use to Do



C. Complete the paragraph with the past tense form of the verbs in parentheses.



D. Work with a partner. Ask and answer about the first and last time you did the activities.

A: When was the first time you rode a bike?

B: I first rode a bike when I was four.

A: When was the last time you rode a bike?

B: I last rode a bike the day before yesterday. I rode it to school.















Life Stories

4 Language in Context



Work in pairs. Look at this old photo, and guess what people did and didn't do then.

People used to walk or ride donkeys in the city. People didn't use to drive cars and trucks in the city.



▲ Makkah, 1930

Listening



Listen to the biography of Prince Sultan bin Salman. Put the events in chronological order. Number them from 1 to 8.

- _ He began helping organizations for the disabled.
- _____ He completed university and flight training in the U.S.
- —— He was on the Saudi Media Committee during the 1984 Olympics.
- _ He started working for the Ministry of Information.
- _ He became Secretary General of the Saudi Commission for
 - Tourism and Antiquities.
- _ He flew aboard the space shuttle *Discovery*.
- _ He became involved in preserving Saudi architectural heritage.

6 Pronunciation 😅



Listen to the pronunciation of *used to*. Then practice.

I used to play with dolls. He **used to** live next door to me. Mona **used to** teach English. They used to work together.

About You 🔀



- 1. Where were you born?
- 2. Where did you grow up?
- 3. Where is your family from?
- 4. Did you use to live in a different place? Where?
- 5. What games did you use to play?
- 6. Did you ever meet a friend somewhere by chance? Explain.
- 7. Where and you meet your best friend?
- 8: Did you ever take part in an activity to help the community? What did you do?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education









Reporter: Your basketball team, The Falcons, is now leading

the Junior League. So, how did the team start?

Khalid: Our coach posted a note on the bulletin board at

> our high school asking for players. The team was formed from the group of hopeful athletes that

turned up at the gym.

Reporter: Do you still have the original team members?

Khalid: Yeah. Charlie and Dave are forwards, Carlos

plays shooting guard, and I'm the point guard. But

Reporter: What about your center forward? When did he

join the team?

Khalid: Trevor came along a few months later. He used

> to play on another team, but he wasn't into the attitude of the players. He said they weren't

serious enough, so he joined our team.

Reporter: Where did you practice, and where did you play?

Khalid: We used to practice in the school gym, but now

we use the sports center. It has better facilities. We started in B Division,

but now we're in A Division.

Reporter: When did your first big break come?

Your Ending

What do you think Khalid's answer was?

- (1) When Trevor joined our team.
- (2) When we won an important tournament.
- 3 When we beat the best team in Division B by 20 points.
- (4) Your idea:

Real Talk

to turn up = to appear unexpectedly What about...? = used to introduce a new topic to be into something = to be interested in, to like big break = important opportunity

About the Conversation

- **1.** How and where did the team members meet?
- 2. Were all the players originally on the team?
- 3. Where did they use to practice?
- 4. Why did Trevor leave the other team?
 - 5. Why did the team change gyms?

وزارة العطوي Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Your Turn

Role-play with a partner. Make up a "fake" interview with a famous athlete. Ask about how the person's career started. Present your interview to the class.



9 Reading





Before Reading

- 1. Have you ever read about the lives of royalty? Who have you read about?
- 2. What do you know about King Salman bin Abdulaziz?

The King of Saudi Arabia



The Custodian of the Two Holy Mosques, King Salman bin Abdulaziz was born in Riyadh on December 31, 1935. He was educated at the Princes' School in Rivadh where he studied sciences, religion, and the Holy Qur'an. He was appointed Crown Prince of the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia and Deputy Prime Minister by his predecessor, King Abdullah bin Abdulaziz, on June 18, 2012. Crown Prince Salman became the King of Saudi Arabia and the Custodian of the Two Holy Mosques on January 23, 2015.

King Abdulaziz appointed young Prince Salman as the Emir of Riyadh in March 1954, when he was just 19 years old. He served as Deputy Governor of Riyadh for just over a year. Then, he became Governor of Riyadh until 1960 and again from 1963 to 2011, when he became the Minister of Defense. He was also Honorary President of the Friends of the Red Crescent

and President of the Higher Committee for the Development of Riyadh. The Prince helped Riyadh develop from a mid-sized town into a major urban metropolis. He attracted a lot of tourism, business, and investment in the Kingdom. Today, Riyadh is one of the richest cities in the world, and it is a major center of travel and trade.



For over 50 years, in his capacity as a prince, His Royal Highness worked with many humanitarian groups that offer relief from natural and human disasters in the Kingdom and abroad. For his humanitarian work, he received many awards: from Bahrain, Bosnia and Herzegovina, France, Morocco, Palestine, the Philippines, Senegal, the United Nations, Yemen, and the King Abdulaziz Medal-First Class. He also supported many cultural projects. He was Chairman of the Riyadh

Charity for Sciences and President of the

Prince's Prize for the Memorization of the Holy Qur'an.

King Salman holds many degrees and academic awards, including an honorary doctorate from the Islamic University of Madinah and the Kant Medal from the Berlin-Brandenburg Academy of Sciences and

• Humanities • He was also awarded an Honorary Doctorate in Literature

• from the University of Umm Al-Qura in Makkah.



SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 18

Ministry of Education 2022181444





After Reading

- A. Match each word with the meaning.
 - **1.** ____ abroad
- a. a big city
- **2.** ____ humanitarian
- **b.** taking away stress and pain
- **3.** ____ relief
- **c.** name someone for an important position
- **4.** ____ appoint
- d. a person who helps others
- **5.** ___ metropolis
- e. in other countries
- **B.** Answer the questions about the reading.
 - **1.** Where did King Salman go to school?
 - **2.** When was he appointed as Crown Prince of the Kingdom?
 - **3.** For how many years was he the Governor of Riyadh?
 - **4.** How did he help to change Riyadh?
 - 5. When did he become the King of Saudi Arabia?



C. Write down important events in King Salman's life. Compare your answers with a partner.

1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	

D. What are some of King Salman's accomplishments? Compare your answers with a partner.

1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	

Discussion

- 1. Do you think celebrities are good role models?
- 2. What do you think about celebrities who speak in favor of certain causes and issues?
- 3. What do you think about celebrities who are philanthropists and raise money for different causes?

<mark>صلحتاا قرازم</mark> Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

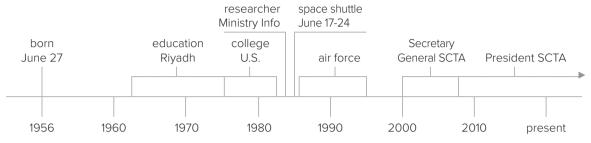
SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 19 13/4/22 6:44 PM

2 Life Stories



10 Writing 🚺

A. Look at the timeline of events in Prince Sultan bin Salman's life. Then, complete the summary with prepositions and time words.



Prince Sultan bin Salman bin Abdulaziz Al	Saud was born (1)	Riyadh ⁽²⁾
June 27, 1956. He was educated ⁽³⁾	Riyadh. ⁽⁴⁾	high school, he went to
study communications and aviation (5)	the Universi	ty of Denver (6) the U.S.
⁽⁷⁾ he was there, he also becan	ne a pilot. He started	d his career ⁽⁸⁾ 1982 as
a researcher ⁽⁹⁾ the Ministry of	Information (10)	Saudi Arabia. ⁽¹¹⁾
1985, Prince Sultan made history (12)	he became th	e first Saudi astronaut to travel
space. He flew aboard the	space shuttle STS-5	1-G Discovery (14) June
17 ⁽¹⁵⁾ June 24. ⁽¹⁶⁾ h	he joined the Royal S	Saudi Air Force as a pilot, and
retired (17) 1996. (18)	2000 (19)	_ 2008, he was Secretary General
of the Saudi Commission for Tourism and A	Antiquities, and (20) _	2008 he has served as
its President.		

Writing Corner

1. Prepositions of place: in, on, at

in Jeddah in Saudi Arabia in the world on Earth on an island at school

2. Prepositions of time: on, at, in, from...to...

on Monday **on** June 3rd **at** 8:00 a.m. **at** noon

in 2001 in May in the winter from 2007 to 2010

3. Time words: since, ago, then, when, before, after

I was raised in Abha. Then my family moved to Riyadh when I was twelve.

I have lived here **since** I was twelve. We moved here two years **ago**.

I learned to read before I went to school.

- **B.** Make a timeline about your life. Mark the important events in your life and your accomplishments on the timeline.
- **C.** Write your life story. Say where you were born, raised, and educated. Include important events, accomplishments, and influences in your life.



Choose a famous person and research the events and accomplishments in his/her life.

ميل قرالة المناس المنا

Ministry of Education 202**220**1444



(this)?

Form, Meaning and Function

Time Expressions for the Past

Last—last night, last Tuesday, last week, last month, last year, last summer **Yesterday**—yesterday, yesterday morning, the day before yesterday Ago—six years ago, two days ago, a week ago, five hours ago, ten minutes ago

When clauses

They didn't go to school when they were four years old. When I was a child, I used to play with my toys all day.

Past dates and times

in 1998, in the 20th century, on May 25th 2000, on Monday, this morning, at 6 A.M.

A. Complete the sentences with the correct time phrases. Use the wor	ds in parentheses.
1. I'm in grade 9 (last) I was in grade 8, and	_ (ago) I was in grade 7
2. I was born (in). I was born (on)	(ago).
3. What time did you go to bed (last)? What time did yo	u wake up
4. I went to bed (at) last night, and I woke up	(at) this morning.
5. We finished Unit 1 of SuperGoal 3 (ago).	
6. I started learning English (when).	
7. I didn't use to read and write (when).	8
8. I started going to this high school (in).	
9. King Abdulaziz Ibn Saud founded the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia	(century).
10. The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia was founded (in)	(on).

- B. Put the words in order to make sentences. Start with the word in **bold**.
 - 1. hosted / in / Beijing / the / Summer Olympics / 2008
 - 2. took / before / math / a / test / We / day / yesterday / the
 - 3. graduated / Fahd / when / was / he / 23 / university / from
 - 4. he / to / morning / was / sick / Ali / so / didn't / class / this / go
 - **5.** ago / ten / **Mona** / a / started / years / as / working / teacher
 - 6. century / didn't / People / cars / to / the / in / use / drive / 19th
 - 7. parents / me / cell phone / My / week / bought / a / last
 - 8. friends / new / I / when / started / high school / made / I
- C. Work with a partner. Ask your partner questions using time expressions for the past. Then change roles.
- A: What did you do last weekend?
- **B:** I visited my grandparents last weekend.
 - A: What time did you wake up this morning?

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

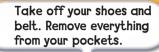




3 When Are You Traveling?







That won't be necessary

Do I have to take off my glasses?

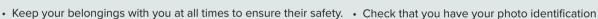


DEPARTURES

C11

B19 D22 C10





- · Put a name tag on your suitcase to identify it.
- Do not agree to pack any items from strangers.
- Do not carry containers with liquids. Place liquids in your checked baggage.
- Always arrive at the airport at least two hours before departure to have extra time in case of long lines.
- (passport is required for international travel), ticket, and boarding pass with you to avoid difficulties.
- · Check with your travel agent about visas and vaccinations for the countries you are visiting.
- · Carry a major credit card.

Quick Check ✓

- **A. Vocabulary.** Underline items that airplane passengers need.
- **B.** Comprehension. Answer the questions.
 - **1.** How many bags is the man checking?
 - 2. Does the man need to take off his glasses?
 - 3. Why is the pilot going to bed early?
 - 4. Why is the young man going to Hawaii?
 - **5.** Where should you put liquids when you travel?
 - 6. What do you need to have with you before
- you leave for the airport?

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

2 Pair Work 🔀



- **A.** Ask and answer about the pictures.
 - What time is the couple's flight leaving?
 - It's leaving at ten.
 - Who will the parents miss?
 - They'll miss their son.
- B. Ask and answer about a trip. Use real or made-up information.
 - When are you going to leave on your trip?
 - I'm leaving for Paris tomorrow.
 - Where will you stay?
 - I'll stay with friends.

When Are You Traveling?



3 Grammar 👊



Present Progressive

Use the present progressive for actions happening now or for definite arrangements in the future.

My friends **are waiting** for me at the airport. What are you doing now?

My friends are arriving tomorrow. What are you doing tonight?

Note: Time expressions such as the following indicate the future: *tonight, tomorrow, next week.*

Future with Going to and Will

Use (be +) going to to talk about plans. Use will + maybe/probably for uncertain or indefinite plans.

What are you **going to** do on your vacation? Where **will** you stay?

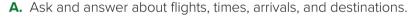
I'm going to travel to Europe. I'm not **going to** travel this year. Maybe I'll stay with friends. I probably won't stay in a hotel.

Infinitives of Purpose

Use the infinitive to say why people do things.

I'm going to KSA **to visit** relatives.

He got up early to catch the plane.



A: What time is Flight 720 arriving?

B: It's arriving at 9:45.

A: Where is it coming from?

B: It's coming from Dubai.

A: What time is Flight 239 leaving?

B: It's leaving at ten o'clock.

A: What gate is it going to depart from?

B: It's going to depart from Gate D22.

Arrivals					
Flight	From	Arriving	Gate		
SV 345	DAMMAM	8:00am	D 20		
EK 720	DUBAI	9:45 AM	C 11		
LH 87	FRANKFURT	10:20AM	B 19		
IB 605	MADRID	11:00AM	A 17		
SV 94	RIYADH	11:40 AM	C 8		
AZ 348	CAIRO	1:00 рм	D 7		

Departures					
Flight	То	Departing	Gate		
JAL 33	ТОКҮО	8:15AM	A 90		
SV 633	AMMAN	9:10am	B7		
BA 239	LONDON	10:00 AM	D22		
TP 987	LISBON	11:30am	C15		
SV 621	JEDDAH	12:20 PM	C 10		
AF 573	PARIS	1:25 РМ	B16		

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 202**24**1444





A: Why is Matt going to Colorado?

B: He's going there to ski.





1. Sam / go / Paris



2. Ali and Maha / go / airport



3. Badr / go / travel agency



4. Ted and his son / go / mall



5. Sabah / go / bank



6. Rudy / go / consulate

- **C.** Now do role plays for the items in exercise **B.** Ask your partner what he/she is going to do in a particular place.
 - **A:** What are you going to do in Colorado?
 - **B:** I'm going to ski. / I'll probably go skiing.
- **D.** Complete your schedule for next Saturday. Then ask and answer questions with a partner. Try to arrange a time to meet and do homework together.
 - A: What are you doing at two o'clock next Saturday?
 - **B:** I'm getting a haircut. How about you?
 - A: I'm not doing anything.

	My Schedule	Activities and Times	My Partner's Schedule	Activities and Times
	Morning		Morning	
	Afternoon		Afternoon	
• • • •	Evening		Evening	
• • • •	• • • •			
زارة التعطيم	9			

Ministry of Education 2022 – 1444

When Are You Traveling?

4 Language in Context





Yahya lives in Dammam. He's going to London on vacation next month.

- 1. List eight items he's going to need. Compare with a partner.
- He is going to need a passport. He's going to have to get a U.K. visa.
- 2. What do you think he's going to do in London? Discuss in small groups.
- He's going to take lots of photos.

Listening



Listen to the conversation. Answer true or false.

- 1. ____ Dan and Larry last saw one another two years ago.
- **2.** ____ Dan is working in the clothing industry.
- **3.** ____ They are both traveling to Milan.
- **4.** ____ Larry is going to Florence to study architecture.
- _ Dan is going to Milan to find new clothing designs.

6 Pronunciation



Listen to the pronunciation of -ing. Then practice.

The plane is arriving at two. Where are you going on vacation? He's coming tomorrow.

When are you leaving?

7 About You 🔀



- **1.** Have you ever traveled by plane?
- 2. Are you afraid of flying?
- 3. What do you like/dislike about plane trips?
- **4.** What do you like/dislike about airports?
- 5. What do you think are the good and bad things about traveling?
- 6. Have you ever had a bad travel experience? Tell about it.



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022261444







8 Conversation <a><a>



Michael: Are you going to Saudi Arabia on business

or vacation?

Mr. Parker: I'm going on business. My company has a

branch in Riyadh. I'm attending a conference tomorrow morning, and then I'll probably fly back home to London next week. How

about you?

Michael: I'm going to Saudi Arabia to study Arabic at

King Khalid University. I'm an exchange student.

Mr. Parker: How long are you staying?

Michael: For a year, in Abha. Have you been there? Mr. Parker: Yes, I have. It's very nice. Wonderful climate, but

kind of slow for me, compared to Riyadh.

Michael: How's your Arabic?

Mr. Parker: Pretty good. I lived in Dubai for a while.

Michael: Well, I still make a lot of mistakes in Arabic, but

my Arab friends say I have a good accent.

Mr. Parker: I'm sure you'll pick up the language quickly.







Real Talk

kind of = in some ways/slightly pretty = very/quite pick up = learn

About the Conversation

Answer about Michael. Then complete the same information about N	.vir. Park	<er< th=""></er<>
--	------------	-------------------

1.	Why is he going to Saudi Arabia?	
2.	How long is he staying?	
3.	What's his Arabic like?	
4.	In which city is he going to stay?	

Your Turn

Imagine you are traveling and you meet someone on the plane. Rolesplay the conversation with a partner. Use the following cues.

1. Where / stay?

2. Why / go / name of place?

3. How long / stay?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 27 13/4/22 6:44 PM

When Are You Traveling?



9 Reading



Before Reading

- 1. What do you know about student exchange or language study programs abroad?
- 2. Would you like to go on one? Why or why not?

Study Arabic in Saudi Arabia

Saudi Arabia is the perfect destination if you want to learn the Arabic language and Islamic culture. Saudi Arabia is unique, with lots of traditions, historic places, and contrasts in scenery.

Why learn Arabic in Saudi Arabia?

Because there is so much to see and visit, you can be sure you'll never run out of things to do before and after your Arabic classes.



Why learn Arabic?

Arabic is the language of the Holy Qur'an. It is spoken by more than 400 million people around the world, mainly in the Middle East and North Africa. Like English, there are many different dialects in Arabic, but the majority of speakers in Saudi Arabia, the U.A.E., Oman, Kuwait, Yemen, Bahrain, and Egypt all understand each other. Arabic is commonly spoken in many other places, even where it is not the first language; for example, in the United States and increasingly in European countries.



Why register at the Arabic Language School?

Learning the language At our school, you will study the language and the culture of Islam!

You will recite the Holy Qur'an, practice conversation, listen, and learn to read and write Arabic. Soon you will be comfortable speaking and using words and expressions the local people use.

Accommodations

You will live with a family. You will share their delicious food, their experiences, and learn all about everyday life in Saudi Arabia. The family members and local people will be pleased to help you with the language and help you experience the culture.



Why Abha?

Abha is the capital of Asir province. It is located in the Asir Mountains, 2,200 meters (7,218 feet) above sea level.



Its mild climate makes it a popular tourist destination, with average temperatures between 12° C (54° F) and 24° C (75° F). With a population of over 250,000, Abha is neither big nor small. The town is known for its traditional stone and mudbrick houses, but it also has modern hospitals and universities.

Abha has a rich heritage and a buzzing marketplace with regional foods and crafts. It attracts a great number of visitors, especially in summer, who come to relax and to take part in the lively atmosphere at the local summer festivals. Some even enjoy paragliding!

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education

After Reading

A. Circle the correct meaning of the words as used in the brochure.

- 1. unique (1st paragraph)
 - a. strange
 - **b.** special
 - c. to be chosen
- 2. to run out (2nd paragraph)
 - a. to go out the door
 - **b.** to come to an end, be left without
 - c. to use up everything
- **3.** dialects (3rd paragraph)
 - a. local varieties of language
 - **b.** spelling differences
 - c. different accents
- **4.** recite (4th paragraph)
 - a. tell a story
 - **b.** answer a question
 - c. repeat from memory

- **5.** rich (last paragraph)
 - a. wealthy
 - **b.** have a lot of sugar
 - c. have a lot of good things
- **6.** heritage (last paragraph)
 - a. traditions
 - **b.** money from relatives
 - c. a preserved building
- 7. buzzing (last paragraph)
 - a. chaotic
 - **b.** busy and lively
 - c. very hot
- 8. atmosphere (last paragraph)
 - a. the way a place or situation makes you feel
 - **b.** traffic
 - c. gases surrounding Earth

- **B.** Answer the questions.
 - **1.** What are the advantages of learning Arabic?
 - 2. How will students learn Arabic at the Arabic Language School?
 - **3.** Where will students live during their stay in Abha?
 - 4. What's the weather like in Abha?
 - **5.** Why is the town so popular with visitors?

Discussion

- 1. Have you ever been on an exchange program or studied in another country? Tell about it.
- 2. How do you think you would adjust to a foreign culture?
- 3. Which country would you like to go to and study a foreign language?
- 4. Discuss the importance of English as a world language. What do you know about where it is used?
- 5. Approximately 580 million people speak Spanish around the world. Do you think that Spanish will be an international language in the future? Say why or why not.

10 Project



Work in groups. Plan a study program for foreign students in your country. Include information about the classes, the accommodations, the location, and entertainment.



Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

3 When Are You Traveling?



11 Writing

A. Read the email. Do you think Adnan is having a good time in Toronto?

Dear Mom and Dad,

It was so nice to hear from you. I think of you all the time, too. You don't need to worry about me because I'm doing fine.

It was a little difficult for me to adjust at first because everything here is so different. The weather in Toronto is quite cold. It's about 14°C right now, but they say it can get really cold in the winter. The food is strange, too. The meals at the cafeteria are pretty good, but nothing like Mom's cooking. This afternoon, we had vegetarian pizza and salad.

The university has quite a large campus. I got lost on the first day, but I managed to ask for directions and made it to class on time. As for my classes, they are really interesting and the teachers are extremely helpful. I have four hours of English every day, so I'm learning quite fast. I still can't speak very well, but my teachers and classmates usually understand me. By the way, my classmates are very friendly, and I've made some new friends. We study together and hang out in the evenings.

Next week, our class is going to visit Niagara Falls. They've arranged for a tour guide to show us around. I'm sure it's going to be fantastic. I'll send you some photos.

I'm going to the library to study now. So, let's talk on Skype this Saturday. I miss you! Love,

Adnan

Writing Corner

1. Intensifiers such as *very*, *quite*, *really*, *pretty*, *so*, and *extremely* make adjectives and other adverbs stronger. These adverbs are placed before the adjective or adverb.

The people are **really** friendly.

I'm learning quite fast.

I feel **pretty** lonely sometimes.

My teachers are **extremely** helpful.

The weather is **so** cold.

I can't speak very well yet.

2. When there is a singular noun, quite is placed before the article.

It has a **very** large campus.

It has **quite** *a* large campus.

B. Look at the writing task in **C** below. Before you write, make a chart and write notes for each paragraph. The chart below is an example of Adnan's email.

1	greetings	think of you, don't worry	
2	differences	difficult to adjust: weather, food	
3	campus/classes	large campus (got lost), interesting classes, helpful teachers, learn fast, friendly classmates (new friends)	
4	plans	visit Niagara Falls: tour guide, photos	
5	closing	library, Skype Saturday, miss you	

c. Imagine you are a student studying in a foreign country. Write an email to a friend telling him/her about your experience. Describe your impressions, how you feel, and what you plan to do while pull alignous are there.

Ministry of Education 202**30**1444



31

12 Form, Meaning and Function

Time clauses

Time clauses are introduced by conjunctions such as: after, as soon as, before, until, when, while. We do not use future forms in a time clause: we use the present.

They'll probably go skiing **when** they *are* on vacation. (future) They went skiing **when** they were on vacation. (past) I'll go shopping **while** you *cook* dinner. (future) He went shopping while his wife cooked dinner. (past)

We place a comma after the time clause when it begins the sentence.

As soon as we arrive, we're going straight to the hotel.



Prepositions of Movement



- A. Match each phrase with the correct time clause.
 - **1.** ____ Take your ticket and passport with you
 - **2.** ____ He's going to play football with his friends
 - **3.** ____ I won't spend a lot of money
 - **4.** ____ They'll probably visit a museum
 - **5.** ____ We're going to miss you
 - **6.** ____ You must go through the security check
 - **7.** Passengers should wait by the gate
 - **8.** ____ They're meeting their son at the airport
 - **9.** ____ You should arrive at the airport
 - **10.** ____ He won't go out with his friends

2022 - 1444

- a. two hours before departure.
- **b.** when they're in London.
- c. until they call for boarding.
- **d.** until he finishes his homework.
- e. as soon as he arrives.
- **f.** before you leave for the airport.
- g. when I go to the shopping mall.
- **h.** before you board the airplane.
- i. while you're away at college.
- j. after he does his homework.
- **B.** Complete the paragraph with the correct prepositions.

	Imad and Jasem are	e visiting London for tw	wo days. When they arrive at Heathrow Ai	irport, they're going to take the	ž
	London Undergrou	nd train (1)	the center of town. The train trave	els above ground as it moves	
	(2)	the airport, but whe	en it gets near the city, it travels (3)	underground	
	tunnels. They're go	ing to get off at Greer	n Park Station, near the hotel. After they c	check (4) the hotel,	
	they'll probably res	t and have dinner. The	e next day, they're taking a tour (5)	the city on a	
	double-decker bus	. The tour stops at Big	Ben and Buckingham Palace, and includ	des a short cruise	
	(6)	the Thames River.	On their last day, they want to walk (7)	Millennium	
	Bridge and visit the	Tate Modern. In the e	On their last day, they want to walk (7) evening, they're going to check (8)	the hotel and tak	e
عطيد	the Underground b التــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	ack (9)	the airport.		
1inistru	of Education				

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 31 13/4/22 6:45 PM

4 What Do I Need to Buy?



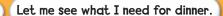
Listen and Discuss



- 1. How often do you go to the supermarket? What do you usually buy?
- 2. Who buys the food and supplies in your family?



202**32**1444



First, for the appetizer, maybe I'll make a salad. I'll get a few tomatoes, peppers, and onions. I have enough parsley and cucumbers for a salad. I have to get some olive oil. I only have a little left, and I don't have any lemons at all.

> Then for the main dish, I'm going to make chicken and rice. I'll need a whole chicken and some agrlic. I think I have the other ingredients.

I have nothing for dessert. Maybe I'll bake some date cakes. I'll need some dates for that.

> Now, I think that's everything.





Quick Check ✓

- A. Vocabulary. Use the groups on page 32 to classify these foods: apples, tuna, ketchup, couscous, turkey, garlic, dates.
- **B.** Comprehension. Complete the chart. What does the woman need to buy for dinner at the supermarket?

Dish	Ingredients Needed
Appetizer	
Main Dish	
Dessert	

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

2 Pair Work 🔀



- A. Ask and answer about your last trip to the supermarket.
 - Did you get any coffee?
 - I got a little.
 - How about lemons?
 - I got a few.
 - How much chocolate did you buy?
 - I bought two bars.
 - And how many eggs?
 - I got a dozen.
- B. Ask and answer about prices.
 - How much are oranges in your country?
 - They're 2 euros a kilo.

33

4 What Do I Need to Buy?



3 Grammar 👊



Expressions of Quantity: A Few, A Little, A Lot of, Much, Many, Enough

Count **Noncount**

I eat a little seafood. I eat a few carrots. I eat **many** vegetables. I don't eat **much** bread.

How many bananas do you eat? **How much** milk do you drink?

Use a lot of and enough for both count and noncount nouns.

I eat a lot of eggs, but I don't eat a lot of bread. I don't eat enough fruit.

Pronouns: Something, Anything, Nothing

I have **something** for lunch. I don't have **anything** for lunch.

I have **nothing** for lunch.

Sequence Words: First, Then, After That, Finally

First, you mix the flour and the eggs. Then you add a little butter.

After that, you put in a teaspoon of baking powder. Finally, you let it rise.

A. Complete the sentences with **something**, **anything**, and **nothing**.

4	Vouiro a good	cook. You always h	21/0	olicious :	for dinno
Ή.	rou re a dood	COOK. YOU always II	ave a	elicious i	for dinne

2. The refrigerator is empty. There is ______ to eat in here.

3. I haven't made _____ special for supper. Make yourself a sandwich.

4. There's _____ better than a nice cup of coffee after a meal.

5. Aren't you having _____ for breakfast? You should eat ____ in the morning.

It isn't good to go out on an empty stomach.

B. Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with How many and How much.

A: How many onions are there? **A:** How much cheese is there?

B: There are a few.

B: There is a little.



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022341444

C. Complete the conversation with any, a little, a few, dozen, package, enough, many, and

much. Then practice with a partner.

Noura: Do you need help?

Mona: Yes. I'm going to make a cake. Please

check the refrigerator.

Are there (1) ____ eggs?

Noura: Yes, there are.
Mona: How (2) _____?

Noura: There are only (3) _____ left.

Mona: How (4) _____ butter is there?

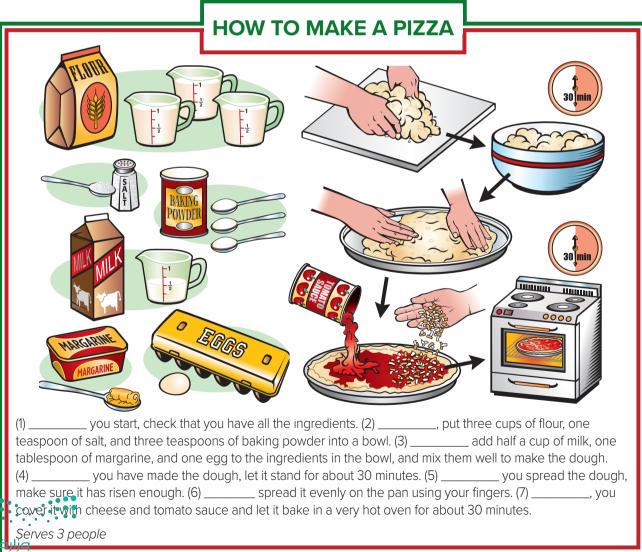
Noura: There's only (5) _____ left. There isn't

(6) ____ for a cake.

Mona: Can you please go to the store and get a

(7) ____ of butter, and a (8) ____ eggs?





Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

35

4 What Do I Need to Buy?

4 Language in Context



Give advice about cooking. Role-play with two other students.

A: How should I cook the chicken?

B: Why don't you roast it in the oven?

C: I usually fry it.

A: I think I prefer to grill it.

chicken / roast







▲ burgers / grill







▲ eggs / fry

▼ artichokes / steam

▲ cake / bake

Listening



In Asma's Shopping Cart				

6 Pronunciation



Listen. Notice the pronunciation of the three sounds. Then practice.

	1	2	3
	sh rimp	ch eese	j am
	fi sh	ch ocolate	j uice
•	sugar	ch ips	oran g e

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 202361444

About You 🔀



- 1. Do you like to go to the supermarket? Why, or why not?
- 2. When did you last go to the supermarket, and what did you buy?
- **3.** What are food prices like in your country?
- **4.** Can you cook? What's your favorite recipe?
- 5. Have you ever baked a cake? Tell about your experience.
- 6. Have you ever eaten an unusual dish? Tell about it.

Father: Mmm! Smells good.

Mother: Well, I have a real international menu today. I hope you

> guys like it. First, I have a Mexican dip—tortilla chips and guacamole. Then for the appetizer I have a shrimp cocktail, New Orleans style. After that, we'll have Moroccan style chicken tagine and couscous, with Brazilian passion fruit

mousse for dessert. And finally, Colombian coffee.

Father: Sounds great. I can't wait. Daughter: Do you need any help?

No, thanks. Everything's under control. Let's sit down and Mother:

have some guacamole.

Father: The quacamole was great! Daughter: How do you make it?

Mother: It's easy. You just follow the recipe. Father: This chicken is absolutely delicious, too!

Mother: Would you like some more?

Father: No, thank you. I've had more than enough.

Daughter: You should start your own restaurant. You're an excellent

cook.

Father: Yeah. I totally agree, but let's keep Mom's cooking for us.

Daughter: I have to learn how to cook.

Mother: I can teach you. It's lots of fun, and it's relaxing. Father: And it's much cheaper and healthier than eating out.

guacamole: an avocado dip—see page 39 for a recipe

chicken tagine: a spicy chicken stew, often with olives and apricots

couscous: grains of wheat dough that resemble rice









Real Talk

you guys = an informal way to address two or more people I can't wait. = I am very eager for something. Everything's under control. = Everything is organized. I've had more than enough. = I can't eat any more.

About the Conversation

- **1.** What kind of meal did the mother prepare?
- 2. Does she need any help in the kitchen?
- 3. What suggestion does the daughter make over dinner?
- **4.** What does the mother suggest to her daughter?
- **5.** What does the father say about eating at home?

Your Turn

Role-play a conversation with a partner. Imagine you have invited someone for a meal. Discuss the food and the recipes you are eparing. Then switch roles.

صلحتاا قرازم Ministry of Education Your Information

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 37

2022 - 1444

13/4/22 6:45 PM

37

4 What Do I Need to Buy?



9 Reading



Before Reading

What do you know about the foods on these pages?

Foods from the Americas

Read about the foods from the Americas. Then try out the recipes.

Tomatoes

Tomatoes are native to Mexico and Central America, and the Aztecs grew them back in the eighth century. In the sixteenth century, Spanish explorers introduced tomatoes to Spain, and the tomato's popularity spread quickly through Europe. The French, Germans, and Italians absolutely loved them. But the British thought they were poisonous at first. In the nineteenth century, a British diplomat introduced tomatoes to the Middle East. and now Egypt is among the world's top tomato producers.

Avocado

The Aztecs also cultivated the avocado (they called it ahuactl). The avocado is an oily fruit, rich in vitamins A, B, and C. The fruit does not get ripe on the tree. People need to pick it from the tree before it develops its flavor and full maturity. Sailors used to call avocados 'seaman's butter," because the fruit lasts for a long time, and it was good for sea vovages.

Chocolate

Chocolate (chocolatl in the Aztec language) was the treasured drink of the Aztecs. When the Spaniard Hernán Cortés arrived in Mexico in 1519, the Aztecs gave him chocolate as part of a royal welcome. It is said that the Aztec Emperor, Moctezuma, used to drink 50 cups of chocolate a day out of a gold cup. The Spanish introduced chocolate to Europe. However, it was only in the nineteenth century that Henri Nestlé, in Switzerland, created the first bar of chocolate. Nowadays, very few people can resist the sweet food—once only for kings.

وزارة التعــ Ministry of Education

Pasta with Tomato Sauce

INGREDIENTS:

DIRECTIONS:

- 5 cloves garlic
- · 3 cups chopped tomatoes
- 5 tablespoons olive oil
- ·salt and pepper to taste
- · fresh basil to taste
- •1 package pasta

Pasta: Cook separately according to package directions.

Sauce: First, chop the garlic into tiny pieces. Then put the tomatoes, olive oil, and garlic in a saucepan with salt and pepper, and cook on moderate to low heat for 20 minutes. After the sauce is thick, remove the pan from the heat. Tear fresh basil

into pieces and add it to the sauce. Pour the sauce over the pasta.



Brownies

INGREDIENTS:

- 3/4 cup margarine
- 1½ cups sugar
- 1 ½ teaspoons vanilla
- 3 eggs
- 3/4 cup flour
- 1/2 cup dark cocoa (powdered chocolate)
- 1/2 teaspoon baking powder
- 1/2 teaspoon salt

DIRECTIONS:

Mix the margarine, sugar, and vanilla in a bowl. Add the eggs, and mix well. After that, add the flour, cocoa, baking powder, and salt. Put the mixture into a baking pan, and

bake it in a hot oven at 180° C (350° F) for 40 45 minutes.



INGREDIENTS:

• 2 ripe avocados

- 2 tablespoons lemon juice
- •1 small onion, chopped
- ½ teaspoon salt
- hot sauce (Tabasco or chili) to taste

DIRECTIONS:

Before you cut the avocados, make sure that they are ripe. Mash them in a bowl with the lemon juice. After that, add the chopped onion and the salt. Finally, add the hot sauce to taste, and mix the ingredients

39

well. Serve the guacamole with tortilla chips.

After Reading

- A. Answer true or false.
 - 1. _____ The Spanish introduced tomatoes to Europe.
 - **2.** _____ Tomatoes are not grown in the Middle East.
 - 3. _____ Early sailors used avocados because they tasted like butter.
 - **4.** _____ Moctezuma sent the king of Spain a gold cup to drink chocolate from.
 - The first chocolate bars date from the twentieth century.
 - **6.** _____ The main ingredient of guacamole is avocado.
- B. Work with a partner. Choose one of the dishes and describe how to make it.

Project 23



Work in a group. Plan a meal with foods from different countries or your own country.

• Write the recipes and illustrate them.

• Present your meal to the class.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 39

13/4/22 6:45 PM

What Do I Need to Buy?



Writing

A. What ingredients do you need to prepare your favorite dish? Write a note to a family member who is going to the supermarket. Ask him/her to buy the things you will need.



I'm going to make turkey schnitzel for dinner. Can you please pick up the following things when you go to the supermarket?

- -some grated Parmesan cheese
- —a package of bread crumbs—4 slices of turkey meat for schnitzel

I think we have everything else. Wait... buy a few eggs and potatoes since there aren't many left.

Thanks a lot. See you tonight.

Maha

Writing Corner

- 1. Use sequence words to show the order things happen: first, next, then, after that, finally. To boil an egg, first boil the water in a pot. Next, put the egg into the water. Then, wait 3-5 minutes. After that, remove the egg from the water. Finally, serve the egg.
- 2. Use time words such as when and until. Fry the onion in oil **until** it is golden brown. When the water boils, put the spagnetti in the pot.
- B. Put the directions for the recipe in the correct order. Number the steps 1–8.

Turkey Schnitzel Ingredients 2 tablespoons milk 1 cup bread crumbs ½ cup flour salt and pepper 2 eggs, beaten 4 thin slices of turkey ¼ cup Parmesan cheese, grated 4 tablespoons olive oil **Directions** Next, dip the turkey slices into the eggs. Fry the turkey at medium heat on both sides until it is golden brown. First, dip turkey slices into the milk, and then coat them with flour. To start, mix the bread crumbs with the Parmesan cheese, salt, and pepper. __ Finally, coat the slices with the seasoned bread crumbs. ____ After that, heat the oil in a large frying pan. Place the milk, flour, eggs, and seasoned bread crumbs in 4 separate shallow bowls. When the slices are coated, place them on a plate and let them sit for 5-10 minutes. **Suggestion:** Serve the turkey schnitzel with salad and fries or mashed potatoes.

C. Write the ingredients and the directions for your favorite recipe. In the directions, remember to سياحتا قرازع use the imperative and sequence words.

Ministry of Education 2022401444



13/4/22 6:45 PM

12 Form, Meaning and Function

Reflexive Pronouns

Use the reflexive pronoun when the subject and the object are the same person.

myself → ourselves yourself yourselves he himself they → themselves she → herself

itself



He likes to look at himself in the mirror.

Note: You can also use the reflexive pronoun to say that you did something without anyone's help: I made the cake myself.

Because versus So

The subordinate conjunction because introduces a reason—it tells why. The conjunction so introduces a consequence or a result.

You should eat a good breakfast **because** it gives you energy. We didn't have anything to eat at home, so we went out for dinner.

Δ.	Complete	the	sentences	with	the	correct	reflexive	pronouns
~ .	Compicie	uic	3CHICHICC3	VVILII	LIIC	COLLCC	ICIICAIVC	promouns

- 1. Nawal cut _____ while she was peeling potatoes.
- **2.** The instructions on the box say: "Do it _____."
- **3.** Welcome everyone! Please help ______ to coffee and snacks.
- **4.** My father was hungry, so he made ______ a sandwich.
- **5.** When you set the timer, the oven will turn _____ off.
- **6.** Our refrigerator broke down, so we bought _____ a new one.
- 7. The children are old enough to look after _____
- **8.** I burned _____ when I took the cake out of the oven.

B. Complete the sentences with **so** or **because**.

- 1. The service was excellent, _____ they left the waiter a big tip.
- **2.** She bought four frozen pizzas _____ they were on sale.
- **3.** Avocados are good for you ______ they're rich in vitamins.
- **4.** Ali didn't feel well, _____ his mother made him some chicken soup.
- 5. I can't make cookies _____ I don't have all the ingredients.
- **6.** She didn't remember the recipe, she called her mother.
- **C.** Join the sentences with **so** and **because**. Use the pronoun it where necessary. We need to go grocery shopping. The fridge is empty.

We need to go grocery shopping because the fridge is empty.

- 1. The bread was stale. We threw the bread away.
- 2. I can't cut the steak with this knife. The knife isn't sharp enough.
- 3. Maha is on a diet. She avoids eating foods with lots of calories.
 - 4. I really enjoy cooking. Cooking is fun and relaxing.
 - **5.** She watches cooking shows on TV. She can learn new recipes.

وزارة العصلو Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 41



EXPANSION Units 1-4

1 Language Review



A. Complete the following information about yourself. Write complete sentences. Then compare with a partner.

25

- 1. Place and date of birth
- 2. Earliest memories
- 3. Favorite toy
- **4.** Favorite teacher in elementary school
- **5.** Best friend in elementary school
- 6. Favorite pastime as a child
- 7. Things you used to do
- 8. Things you didn't use to do
- B. Write questions for the following answers. Use the underlined words in each question.
 - 1. I don't know what I'm doing next Thursday.
 - 2. No, I'm going to do my homework tonight.
 - 3. He'll probably go to college after high school.
 - 4. Their friends are arriving from Syria tomorrow.
 - **5.** She's going to meet her sister at the mall.
- **C.** Complete the sentences with the correct verb or verb form.



Siberian Tigers



What (1) _____ probably become of the Siberian tiger, an endangered species, in the future? There (2) _____ now only about 400 to 500 Siberian tigers in the wild. (3) ____ authorities be able to protect them? Siberian tigers (4) ____ in the forests of eastern Asia, northern China, and Manchuria, but the majority survive in the Ussuiland region of Russia. Some tigers (5) ____ born and raised in zoos. An adult male normally (6) ____ 440 to 660 pounds (200 to



300 kilograms) and measures about 13 feet (4 meters) from head to tail. They (7) _____ very large animals and consume a lot of food every day because of the cold climate. At one meal, a Siberian tiger can



(8) _____ up to 95 pounds (45 kilograms) of meat. Like all big cats, they hunt for their food. They sometimes (9) ____ some of their catch in trees, so other predators can't see it or find it. If they can't eat it all in one meal, they take a nap and finish it off later.



%

رارت التعطيام

Ministry of Education 2022421444

D. Complete the sentences with expressions of quantity. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

1. We only have _____ olive oil left. Don't forget to buy ____ oil.

2. Tony doesn't eat _____ seafood at all. He's allergic to it.

3. I'm trying to lose weight. Please give me only _____ french fries.

4. Many children don't eat _____ fruit because they don't like it.

5. _____ milk do you drink in a day?

6. _____ eggs do you eat in a week?

7. I never put _____ onions in the salad. They have too strong of a taste.

8. Have _____ hot tea. It'll make you feel better.

E. Read the text. Then use the prompts to ask and answer questions with a partner.

Pandas

The lovable, cuddly-looking panda is one of the world's most popular animals. Unfortunately, it's also one of the most vulnerable species. Pandas live only in the dense bamboo areas of the misty, rainy forests of southwestern China. Today only about 1,900 pandas remain in the wild. The Chinese government and various conservation organizations are working to protect pandas in their natural habitat. They want to maintain a "bamboo corridor" through which pandas can move freely. Bamboo shoots and leaves account for 99 percent of a panda's diet. An adult giant panda eats up to 95 pounds (45 kilograms) of bamboo per day over a period of about 16 hours. So it is important to have a protected place with a lot of bamboo available.

- 1. Where / pandas / live?
- 2. How many / pandas / in the wild?
- **3.** How / organizations / work to protect pandas?
- 4. How much / eat?
- **5.** How long / eat / a day?

Discussion

- **1.** Are there any endangered or vulnerable species in your country?
- **2.** What are the authorities doing about conservation of wildlife in your country?
- 3. What can we do to preserve wildlife for future generations?

2 Writing



Imagine you belong to an organization that helps to protect endangered or vulnerable animals. Unfortunately, you only have funds to help one species.

Decide which animal you would like to help protect and write a report about it.

مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 43 13/4/22 6:45 PM

EXPANSION Units 1-4

3 Reading 📃



Before Reading

- 1. Look at the photos. What do you think the text is about?
- 2. What do you know about the different ways of conserving water and providing freshwater?





WATER FOR LIFE

Imagine going to get a drink of water and discovering that the faucet is dry; or jumping into the shower to cool off on a steamy hot day and discovering that there's no water... Most of us simply take water for granted. We think there's plenty of it—in oceans, lakes, rivers, and streams. But this is not the case. The water we are using now is the very same water that the dinosaurs used millions of years ago. It is simply recycled over and over again. There will never be any more water on Earth than there is now.

Most of the water on our planet (97%) is salt water stored in oceans. The remaining 3 percent is freshwater—and most of that is locked up in ice caps and glaciers. In fact, less than 1 percent of the planet's water is usable freshwater. It's alarming that at the projected rate of population growth, humanity will use up more than 70 percent of all accessible freshwater by 2025.

Water is essential to people in more ways than we might think. We need water for cooking, bathing, transportation, and recreation. We eat aquatic plants and fish. We use water to irrigate our crops, to produce hydroelectric power, and to manufacture products. Water is indispensable for human health and well-being. People can live for two months without food, but will die in less than a week without water.

One of the greatest challenges facing the world in the twenty-first century is to preserve our natural reserves and to provide safe drinking water to the 20 percent or more of Earth's population that currently lacks easy access to it. The United Nations General Assembly proclaimed the years from 2005 to 2015 as the International Decade for Action "Water for Life."

One of the solutions to the problem of water conservation is to recycle wastewater. Stensund Folk College near Stockholm, Sweden, for example, is putting wastewater to good use. The school treats

the wastewater in a greenhouse, where it is then used to provide water to plants and fish in an integrated cultivation system. In Lima, Peru, ponds full of algae and other small organisms clean up the wastewater. After 20 days, it is safe for reuse. Currently many factories, hotel chains, and apartment buildings around the world are installing water recycling systems.

We all need to be part of the solution, too. We need to learn how to use our water wisely. So the next time you have a drink or take a shower, think of how fortunate you are, and save water for life.



Stensund Wastewater Aquaculture



وزارة التـّـكـ Ministry of Education 2022441444



After Reading

- A. Choose the correct answer.
 - 1. Why do many people take water for granted?
 - a. It's cheap.
- **b.** It cools you down. **c.** It's easily available.
- **2.** How much of the water on our planet is freshwater?
 - a. a great part
- **b.** a small amount
- c. a lot
- 3. How long can human beings live without water?
 - **a.** less than one week **b.** two weeks
- **c.** one month
- 4. What is one of the world's greatest challenges in the 21st century?
 - **a.** to recycle seawater **b.** to find water
- c. to provide freshwater
- **5.** What do people use to clean up wastewater in Peru?
 - a. algae
- **b.** fish
- c. sun

B. Answer true or false.

- 1. _____ There is more freshwater today on Earth than at the time of the dinosaurs.
- **2.** _____ By 2025, we'll use up 1 percent of all existing freshwater.
- 3. _____ At least one-fifth of the world's population does not have easy access to safe drinking water.
- **4.** _____ The main goal of "Water for Life" is to recycle wastewater.
- **5.** _____ At Stensund Folk College, Sweden, fish live in recycled water.



Discussion

- 1. Water is essential for life. Discuss the different ways that humans depend on water every day.
- 2. What will happen to a community if its water becomes contaminated?
- 3. What do you know about the different ways of conserving and providing freshwater?

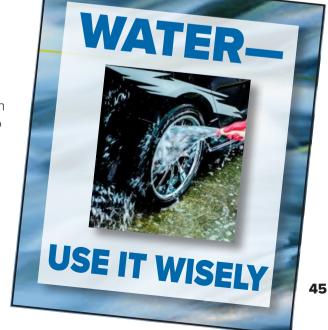
4 Project



Work in a group. Research ways to save water in our everyday lives. Then prepare a campaign to persuade people to save water.

- 1. Find a title for your campaign.
- 2. List everyday suggestions to save water.
- 3. Present to the class.







EXPANSION Units 1-4

5 Chant Along



What Have They Done to You?

Parrot, parrot, what have they done to you? Parrot, parrot, what have they done to you? They put you in a cage and made you talk. They cut your wings and made you walk. Look what they've done to you. Just look what they've done to you!

River, river, what have they done to you?
River, river, what have they done to you?
Your crystal waters no longer flow.
The fish and the lilies no longer grow.
Look what they've done to you.
Just look what they've done to you!

Forest, forest, what have they done to you?
Forest, forest, what have they done to you?
They cut your trunks and cut your branches.
They said they needed you for ranches.
Look what they've done to you.
Just look what they've done to you!

But we can save the birds and bees,
Mountains, rivers, flowers, and trees.
It's a problem that we all must face.
If we all just do our share.
Save the water, clean the air.
We can make the world a better place.
We can make the world a better place.
We can make the world a better place.







Vocabulary

Find words in the song that mean:

- 1. a kind of farm
- 2. move, like water in a river
- **3.** a kind of flower
- 4. a kind of insect

Comprehension

- A. Answer the questions about the song.
 - **1.** What happened to the parrot?
 - 2. Is the water in the river clean?
 - **3.** Do fish live in the water now?
 - **4.** Why did they cut the trees down?
 - **5.** Who are "they" in the song?
- B. What do you understand by the following? Write your answers.

1.	"It's a	problem	that we al	I must face"	means	

2.	"If we all just do our share" means	
	,	

Discussion

Discuss ways that people can improve the situations mentioned in the song.

- 1. How can people clean up pollution?
- 2. How can people prevent forests from being cut down?

6 Project



Many environmental organizations are concerned about wildlife and ecology. Research some environmental organizations in your country on the Internet and discuss your findings with the class.



2022 - 1444





47

5 Since When?



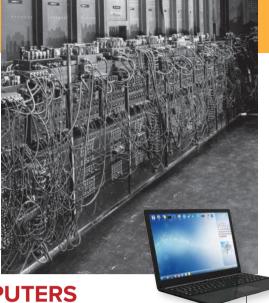
Listen and Discuss 🕢



- 1. How long do you think these inventions have been around?
- 2. How have these things changed people's lives?
- 3. Which of them can't you live without?

VENTIONS

Many inventions aren't as old as you think. The following inventions are part of people's everyday lives, but some haven't been around for all that long. Read about their history. Does any of the information surprise you?



COMPUTERS

Computers have changed the lives of so many people. The IBM 701 computer produced in 1953 was huge, slow, and took up an entire room. It was the first computer that was successfully sold to businesses. Smaller PCs came into widespread use in the 1980s. Over the last few years, laptop computers have become smaller. faster, and lighter, and they contain a greater number of features.

PRINTERS

Mass printing has been around since Johannes Gutenberg invented movable type and the printing press in 1440 in Germany. Nowadays, small, portable, high-tech printers can be found in offices and homes everywhere.



TELEVISIONS

Television has been around for a long time. The television set has become a common household device. It first became commercially available in the late 1930s, and blackand-white TVs became widespread in homes in the 1960s. Nowadays, we have digital color TVs and even mirrors that are also TV screens.



Digital photography hasn't been around for that many years. In 1975, Steven

Sasson, an engineer at Eastman Kodak, captured a blackand-white image on a digital cassette tape at a resolution of .01 megapixels. Before that, cameras used rolls of film to produce a photograph. George Eastman introduced rolls of film to the public in 1888 for use in his box camera.

صلاحتاا قرازم

Ministry of Education

2022481444



STOVES AND OVENS

The first successful gas stove appeared in 1826, and the first electric stove in 1891. The microwave oven was invented by accident in 1946, when engineer Percy Spencer realized that microwaves could heat and cook foods faster than conventional ovens. The first microwave oven for use in homes was produced in 1967.



CELL PHONES

Portable cellular phones first appeared in the 1970s. The early model was called "the brick." It weighed 2 pounds (907 grams), offered just a half hour of talk time for every recharge, and sold for \$3,995. Even though it was clumsy and expensive, consumers lined up by the hundreds to buy the first cellular phones as soon as they hit the market. Since then, phones have gotten smaller and much lighter, and they have become a necessary part of everyday life.



- A. Vocabulary. Find six words in the article that relate to technology.
- ? high-tech
- **B.** Comprehension. Answer about the inventions.
 - 1. How long has IBM produced commercially successful computers?
 - 2. Has printing been around for a long time?
 - **3.** How long have TV sets been common in homes?
 - **4.** How long ago did the first microwave ovens appear in homes?
- 6. For how many years have people had cell phones?

5. How long have cameras been on the market?

2 Pair Work



Ask and answer about the inventions.

- How long have people used cell phones?
- They've used them since the seventies.
- How long have you had a computer?
- I've had a computer for a long time.

وزارة التحليم

3 Grammar 👊



Present Perfect Tense versus Simple Past

Use the present perfect to talk about an action that happened in the past when the exact time isn't known or important. Use the past tense when the exact time is given.

Present Perfect Past

A: Have you ever been to France?

A: When were you there?

B: Yes, I've been there.

B: I was there two years ago.

Present Perfect with For and Since

Use the present perfect with for and since to talk about an action that began in the past and that continues into the present.

For indicates the period of time: for two months, for a year, for a long time.

Since indicates when the action began: since yesterday, since last June.



Affirmative (+)

ľve (I + have) You've (you + have) He's studied English for five years. (he + has) She's since third grade. (she + has) We've (we + have) They've (they + have) Negative (-)

I/You/We/They haven't received an email for two days. He/She since Tuesday. hasn't

Question with How Long

How long have you played football? I've played football for three years. since I was 12.

- A. Complete the sentences with for or since.
 - 1. Hameed has had the same TV _____ 15 years.
 - **2.** I've had my laptop _____ last June.
 - **3.** We've worked on this project _____ a month.
 - **4.** My friends haven't visited me _____ my graduation.
 - **5.** We haven't used our car _____ a long time.
- 6. I've been drinking tea _____ years.7. Tariq has worn glasses _____ the age of seven.

when have you had that beautiful watch? صلحتاا ة الله

Ministry of Education 2022501444



People have had credit cards since 1950 / for about 70 years.

Invention	Date	Invention	Date
credit card	1950	electric lightbulb	1879
canned food	the early 1800s	filmmaking	1895
wristwatch	1868	paper clip	1867
radio	1901	airplane	1903
toothpaste	1824	ballpoint pen	1888
	THE RESERVE THE PARTY OF THE PA		







C. Have you used any of the inventions in exercise **B** above or on pages 48 and 49? How long have you used them? Ask and answer questions with a partner. Add other inventions.

A: Do you have a credit card?

B: Yes, I do.

A: How long have you had it?

B: I've had it for two years. OR I've had it since I was 18.

A: Have you ever been on a plane?

B: Yes, I have. I flew on a plane on my vacation.

51

D. Complete the paragraph with the verbs in parentheses. Use the present perfect or simple past tense.

Keep Cool

<u>صلحتاا</u> قرازم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

4 Language in Context



Discuss these topics with a partner:

- Things you've done/haven't done for months, years, ages
- Things you've done/haven't done since you were small, last year, the age of 10
- Things you've never done

ightharpoonup I haven't been rock climbing in a long time. OR I've never been rock climbing.





Listen to the conversation. Answer the questions.

- 1. Since when has Fahad walked for exercise?
- 2. How long has Fahad had his new job?
- 3. How long has Saeed been married?



6 Pronunciation



Listen. Notice the contractions of *have*. Then practice.

How've you been?

Where've you been?

What've you done?

7 About You 🔀



- **1.** How long have you studied English?
- 2. How long have you played a sport or had a hobby?
- **3.** How long have you had any of these items: computer, laptop, digital camera, scooter, cell phone?
- 4. How long have you gone to school?
- **b** How long have you lived in your house?
- 6. How long have you known your best friends?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022521444







Fadi: Hi. This is a surprise.

Adnan: Hi there. Long time no see.

Yeah. We haven't seen each

other for about... er...

Adnan: Five years. Since high school.

Has it been that long?

Adnan: Yeah. So, how are you doing?

Fadi: Great. I'm working in a bank.

> I've been in the accounting department for a year now. And you haven't changed

at all.

Adnan: Well, you have. You're looking

more, well, serious. I suppose you're happy with your job?

Fadi: Yes, very much so.

Adnan: This is good, as it is important to like one's job.

Fadi: And what have you been up to?

Adnan: I've taken over my father's restaurant. And I got married last year.

Fadi: Really? Congratulations! I'm getting married next month. I wanted to finish

college and start a career before I settled down.



Long time no see. = I haven't seen you for a long time. ...er = a sound of hesitation, to show that the speaker is thinking What have you been up to? = What are you doing these days? Congratulations! = a response to good news relating to an achievement settle down = get married

About the Conversation

- 1. How long has it been since Adnan and Fadi have seen each other?
- 2. Have they changed a lot?
- 3. Where is Fadi working?
- **4.** How long has Fadi been working in a bank?
- **5.** How long has Adnan been married?

Your Turn

Work with a partner. Role-play a conversation between you and an old friend you haven't seen for a long time. Include the following topics:

1. Say how long you haven't seen each other.

53

- 2. Say where and when you last met.
- 3. Say what you're doing now.



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



9 Reading



Before Reading

- 1. What do you know about early film production?
- 2. What do you know about special effects?

A HISTORY OF SPECIAL EFFECTS

- 1 Audiences have been fascinated by the moving images in films ever since the Lumière brothers first showed short films in a café in Paris on December 28, 1895. **That** day, the audience screamed when a train
- 5 on the film came straight toward them. Since **then**, filmmakers have used various techniques to amaze viewers. **These** techniques form the art of special effects—and create the visual illusions on the screen.
- One of the first special effects used in motion pictures 10 was discovered by accident. While filming in the streets of Paris in 1896, Georges Méliès's camera stopped and started again. When he viewed the film later, he found that the "stop trick" had caused a bus



to turn into a carriage and pedestrians to disappear or change into different people. Because the film 15 sequence had been interrupted, the picture seemed to mysteriously change before his eyes. Since then, filmmakers have used tricks like this to make people see things that didn't happen in real life.

Filmmakers today still use other old techniques such as miniatures and the animation of small-scale models. One of the most famous special effects in film history was the title character in King Kong, made in 1933. The huge gorilla on top of the Empire State Building was actually only 18 inches (45 centimeters) 20 high. The film contained many revolutionary technical innovations for its time.

Another classic was Star Wars (1977) and its sequels, created by George Lucas. His ideas for the imagery and action scenes were so fantastic that the special effects crew often had to invent new techniques to accomplish them. They made many improvements in effects technology and developed a computer-controlled camera to create scenes with more realistic motion.



- 25 Nowadays, digital technology has given special effects a totally new dimension. Films such as Jurassic Park, Toy Story, Transformers, and Pirates of the Caribbean have become references in the art of visual effects. Imaginary
- 30 situations and characters that only existed in books and comic books, such as Spiderman, have also been made to look realistic on television thanks to computer-generated images.

The art of filmmaking never stops. What amazing visual effects will filmmakers use in the future? You'll see **them** on the screen soon!

صلحتا قرازه Ministry of Education 2022541444

After Reading

- A. Match the words with their meanings.
 - **1.** ____ technique
 - 2. ___ sequence
 - **3.** ____ interrupt
 - **4.** ____ miniature
 - **5.** ____ innovation
 - 6. ____ accomplish
- a. a new way of doing things
- **b.** a small model
- c. succeed in doing something
- **d.** a way of doing things
- e. stop in the middle
- f. actions or events in a particular order



- **B.** Answer about the article.
 - 1. How long have audiences watched films?
 - 2. How was the "stop trick" discovered?
 - 3. What special effect was used for King Kong?
 - 4. How did the special effects crew of Star Wars create realistic motion?
 - 5. What films have become references in the art of visual effects?
 - 6. Have you seen any of the films mentioned in the article? What is your opinion of them?



55

Discussion

- 1. Give examples of special effects in films you've seen on TV. Which impressed you the most?
- 2. Describe a TV film you saw that had a lot of special effects.
- **3.** Do you like to watch old black and white films? Why, or why not?
- 4. Have you ever seen a 3-D (three-dimensional) film?
- **5.** What do you think special effects will be like in the future?

10 Project



- 1. Work in groups. What do you think is the most important invention of the last century? How has it changed people's lives?
- 2. Present your arguments to the class about why you think it is so important.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

ابط الدرس الرقمي (المرابع الرقاب الرقاب الرقاب الرقاب الرفاب الرفاب

11 Writing 🚺

Δ.	Look back at the	Reading o	n nage 54	What does	each word	refer to?
М.	LOOK DUCK OF THE	Reading 0	ni page J a .	. What aces	Each Word	refer to:

1. Th	at (line 3)	5.	this (line 16)	-
2. the	en (line 5)	6.	its (line 20)	
3. Th	ese (line 6)	7.	They (line 23)	
4. the	en (line 15)	8.	them (line 33)	

Writing Corner

in mind.

For better cohesion in writing:

- Use subject, object, and possessive pronouns or possessive adjectives.
 I collect stamps. I keep them in albums according to their country and date.
- 2. Use demonstrative pronouns and adverbs like: *this, that, these, those* or *then, there*. I started collecting stamps five years ago. Since **then**, I've collected over 2,000 of them. **This** is the oldest stamp that I have. **Those** are from Argentina.
- 3. Use relative pronouns like: *who, that, which.*The man **who** gave me this stamp said it is very old. It was on a letter **that** he received when he was a young boy.
- B. Read the paragraphs. Circle the pronouns. What or who do they refer to?

I have one possession that is really important to me. This is my bike, which is special for many reasons.

I've had my bike for about two years. When I first saw it in the window of the sports shop, I just knew that I had to have it. My parents agreed that I could buy it, but they said I had to pay for it myself. That's one reason why it's so special to me. I'd never bought anything so expensive before. Since then, my bike and I go everywhere together. I ride it to school, to the park, to football practice, and sometimes I just ride it without any destination

I always try to keep my bike in good condition, but sometimes it breaks down. I've learned to repair a flat tire. Once, the chain came loose, so I learned how to fix that, too. Whenever I manage to save a bit of money, I like to get new accessories for my bike.

I've bought reflectors, new handle bar grips, a bicycle

pump, and a water bottle. As soon as I save enough money, I'm going to buy a Cateye Cycle Computer that calculates distance and speed.

I love riding and exploring new neighborhoods. Riding helps me clear my head and forget about my worries. It's great exercise, too. Of course, I'm careful when I ride in traffic and I always wear a helmet.

C. Write about some of your most important possessions. Say how long you've had them and why they are special. Remember to use appropriate pronouns to link sentences.





12 Form, Meaning and Function

The Passive

We use the passive to emphasize the action and not who or what does it. To make the passive, we use the verb be and a past participle.*

Simple Present: Millions of people use the Internet. (active)

The Internet **is used** by millions of people. (passive)

Present Perfect: Technology has changed our lives. (active)

Our lives have been changed by technology. (passive)

Simple Past: Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone. (active)

The telephone was invented by Alexander Graham Bell. (passive)

The person or thing that does the action is the agent. When we want to show the agent, we use by + the agent. When the agent is not necessary, we leave it out.

A thief stole my bike.

My bike **was stolen**. (by a thief is not necessary)

Someone has broken the window.

The window has been broken. (by someone is not necessary)

The boys broke the window.

The window was broken by the boys. (necessary)

* See page 162 for a list of the past participles of irregular verbs.





A company in Germany makes these cars.

- These cars are made by a company in Germany.
 - 1. Karl Benz made the first car in 1886.
 - 2. Companies all the over world produce cars today.
 - 3. They have made many changes in our city.
 - 4. Did Alexander Fleming discover penicillin?
 - **5.** They filmed the documentary in a desert oasis.
 - **6.** Did they invite you to the graduation ceremony?
 - 7. People speak English all over the world.
 - **8.** Steven Sasson invented the digital camera in 1975.
- **B.** Change the sentences from passive to active.
 - **1.** Typewriters have been replaced by word processors.
 - 2. All entrées in this restaurant are served with rice and salad.
 - **3.** Was the first airplane flown by the Wright brothers?
 - 4. Soap has been used by people in the Middle East for nearly 5,000 years.
 - **5.** The way we communicate has been changed by cell phones and computers.
 - 6. Roughly thirteen percent of the world's oil is produced by Saudi Arabia.
- 7. An encyclopedia of medical practices was written by Al-Zahrawi in 1000.
 - 8. Many flying machines were designed by da Vinci, but they were never built.







SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 57 13/4/22 6:45 PM

6 Do You Know Where It Is?



Listen and Discuss 🔃



What do you think people mean when they say a town or neighborhood has a good quality of life?

Do You Know Where This Place Is?

Look at each photo, read the text, and guess the name of the city or country. In what ways is it similar to or different from where you live?

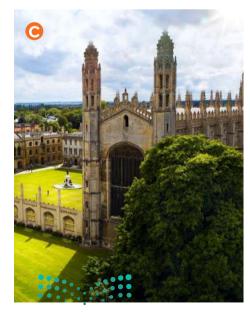




The public transportation system is the most efficient in the world. The bullet trains can travel at 186 miles (300 kilometers) per hour and are extremely punctual. Fares for the express trains are as expensive as airplane fares, but overall, the time required for the train trip is usually shorter, since there is no need to travel to an airport.

The city is known to be one of the safest cities in • the world. The overall crime rate is roughly the same as that of Singapore, but lower than that of Tokyo, Toronto, and many other large cities.



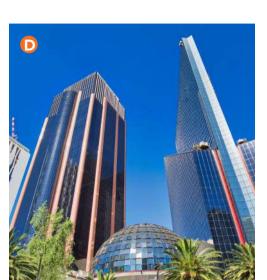


◆ It is home to one of the oldest universities in the world and one of the largest. Nowadays, the town isn't as quiet as it used to be, but the quality of life is still just as good. There are lots of green areas, and a quarter of the population cycles around the town: over the bridges, through the parks, and along the narrow streets.

Answers

A Japan, B Hong Kong, C Cambridge (England), D Mexico City

وزارة العطوي Ministry of Education 2022581444



◆ Surveys show that the city has the worst traffic in the world. It is worse than Sao Paulo, Brazil. The average commuter spends four hours in traffic per day. There are approximately 6 million cars, taxis, buses, and other vehicles carrying 22 million people.

Quality-of-Life Indicators

What do you look for in a town/community?
Check the indicators that are important to you

- Cost of living
- ☐ Cost of housing
- ☐ Clean air/air quality
- ☐ Low crime rate
- ☐ Green areas
- ☐ Hospitals
- ☐ Schools
- ☐ Public transportation
- ☐ Culture and recreation

Quick Check

- A. Vocabulary. Underline the comparative and superlative forms in the article.
- **B.** Comprehension. Answer *true* or *false*.
 - 1. ____ In Japan, trains are less expensive than planes.
 - 2. ____ The trains in Japan travel at a speed faster than sound.
 - 3. ____ The crime rate in Hong Kong is as low as that of Singapore.
 - 4. ____ Cambridge has a lot of green areas, but noise is a problem.
 - **5.** ____ The traffic in Mexico City is much worse than in Sao Paulo.
- C. Rank the items in the quality-of-life chart from 1-9. Compare your answers with a partner.

2 Pair Work 🖼



Ask and answer about the places you know. Use ideas in the article and the chart.

- Do you know what the cost of living is like in Amman?
- It isn't as expensive as it is in Abu Dhabi.
- Which do you think is more polluted, Sao Paulo or Mexico City?
- Sao Paulo is just as polluted as Mexico City.

59

وزارة العصلو Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Do You Know Where It Is?





Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adjectives

Buses are fast. Bus tickets are expensive.



Comparative

Trains are **faster** than buses. Train tickets are more expensive.



Superlative

Planes are the fastest. Plane tickets are

the most expensive.



Buses are less expensive than taxis. But the subway is the least expensive way to travel.

bad / worse / the worst **Irregular Forms:** good / better / the best

Comparisons with as...as

Use as...as to say that two things are the same or different. You can use just for emphasis.

In Japan, trains are as expensive as planes.

This hostel is **just as comfortable as** the hotel, and it doesn't cost **as much**.

Our neighborhood isn't as noisy as our old one, and it isn't as dangerous.

Indirect Questions

There is no inversion of the subject and verb in indirect questions.

Direct Questions

What's the name of the street? Where is the nearest bank? When does the store open? Where can I get good pizza? **How** many people live here? Who planned this town?

Indirect Questions

Do you know what the name of the street is? Do you know where the nearest bank is? Do you know when the store opens? Could you tell me where I can get good pizza?

Could you tell me how many people live here? Could you tell me who planned this town?

A. Complete the sentences. Use the correct form of the adjectives.

1. The downtown area is usually	(noisy) than the suburbs.
2. The hospitals in cities are usually	(good) than ones in the country.
3. Public transportation is	(frequent) at night than during the day.
4. My hometown has the	(clean) air of all the towns in this country.
5. Many people say that Sao Paulo I	has the (bad) traffic in the world.
••• 6. The subway is	_ (crowded) at rush hour than at other times.
7 Housing is usually	_ (crowded) at rush hour than at other times (expensive) in the country than in the city.
8. The cost of living in small towns is	s usually (cheap) than in big cities.
يلحتاا قرازع	

Ministry of Education 2022601444

_	1 4 / * *			
R	\/\/rit_	sentences	with	ac ac

•	The Maxi camera is easy to use. The Digitron model is just as easy.
	The Maxi camera is just as easy to use as the Digitron.

- 1. The Flash computer is fast. The XYZ model is just as fast.
- 2. Majid is a smart young man, and so is his brother Nasr.
- **3.** This red car is expensive. The blue car is less expensive.
- **4.** Rome is an amazing city, and so is Paris.
- C. Work with a partner. Make indirect questions. Use **Do you know...?** or **Could you tell me...?**
- What time does the bus arrive? Do you know what time the bus arrives?
 - **1.** Where is the main post office?
 - **2.** How often do the buses come?
 - **3.** What time does the bank open?
 - **4.** Where is the nearest pharmacy?
- **5.** Who can give us directions?
- **6.** Which way is the center of town?
- 7. When does the gas station close?
- **8.** What is the name of the highway to town?
- **D.** Complete the conversation. Use comparative and superlative forms of the adjectives. Then practice the conversation with a partner.
 - A: In your opinion, what is the ______ (1. good) restaurant in town?
 - B: I think it's Antonio's.
 - A: I disagree. Antonio's isn't as _____ (2. good) as Gino's. Gino's has _____ (3. good) pasta than Antonio's.
 - **B:** But Antonio's is always crowded.
 - A: Of course. It's the _____ (4. popular) restaurant in town.
 - But it is still not the _____ (5. good) place to eat.
 - **B:** So, can you tell me where the _____ (6. good) food in town is?
 - A: In my opinion, it's at 209 Mulberry Street.
 - **B:** But that's where you live.
 - A: Exactly. No one's cooking is as good as my mom's.







Do You Know Where It Is?



4 Language in Context

- 1. Work in pairs. Choose the best place for Yousef to live. Then compare with other pairs.
- 2. Take a class vote. Which place does the class think is best for Yousef?

Yousef is looking for a place to live. He wants a small, quiet place in a good neighborhood. He doesn't have a car, but he has a motorcycle. Yousef is a student, and he has a part-time job. He earns about \$1,500 a month.



Listening



Listen to the news story about garbage and recycling. Answer true or false.

- 1. _____ The garbage from one week in Mexico City can fill a large stadium.
- 2. _____ The United States doesn't produce as much garbage as Mexico.
- 3. _____ Today, only paper and cans are recyclable.
- **4.** _____ About one hundred pounds of recycled paper saves one tree.
- **5.** _____ In Curitiba, Brazil, people can get bus coupons when they recycle garbage.

6 Pronunciation 😅



Listen. Notice that the indirect question has rising intonation. The information question with **Where** has falling intonation. Then practice.

Do you know where the bus stop is? Where is the museum?

About You



Describe three things in your town that have changed in the last year or two.

• 2. Talk about something that has become cheaper or more expensive recently.

Compare things that are/aren't as good in two neighborhoods in your town.

Ministry of Education hat are the best restaurants, stores, and hangout places in your town? Does the class agree? 202**362**1444

Faris: So how long have you lived out here in the suburbs?

Adel: Since I left home, about two years ago. I wanted to have a place of my own. The apartment was a bit run down, so I had to renovate it.

Faris: Well, you did a good job. It's really nice and cozy.

Adel: I'm glad I moved into this neighborhood. It's guiet and safe, and I have really nice neighbors.

Faris: Are there a lot of stores and green areas in the neighborhood?

Adel: Definitely! There are parks and supermarkets and a mall. The only thing is that I spend a lot of time commuting to work. But you can't have it all. What's your place like?

Faris: Do you know where the Rangers' stadium is? I live about two blocks away. I often can't find a place to park, and there's sometimes a lot of noise because of the games.

Adel: Why don't you find another place and move out?



Your Ending

What do you think Faris's response is?

- (1) It's close to my job.
- (2) I guess I'm used to it.
- (3) Now I'm a Rangers fan.
- **4** Your idea: _

Real Talk

a bit = a little

run down = in need of fixing/not looked after Definitely! = an expression that shows strong agreement The only thing is that... = used to introduce a problem/issue you can't have it all = everything has something negative

About the Conversation

- 1. Is Adel's neighborhood dangerous?
- 2. What did he do to his apartment?
- 3. What doesn't he like about the suburbs?
- 4. Where does Faris live?



Your Turn

Talk with your partner about your neighborhood. Discuss the following things.

- 1. Where do you live—in a house or an apartment?
- 2. What do you like/dislike about your neighborhood?
- 3. What facilities are in your neighborhood?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 63 13/4/22 6:45 PM

Do You Know Where It Is?



9 Reading

Before Reading

- 1. Which cities in the Middle East do you think have the best quality of life?
- 2. What do you base your opinions on? Give reasons.

King Fahd's Fountain ▶



THE BRIDE OF THE RED SEA

- 1 For 20 consecutive years, Jeddah has been named a "global city" by the GaWC for offering a high quality of life to its citizens. So what makes Jeddah a global city and one of the best
- places to live in the Middle East? Residents and visitors point out several aspects relating to everyday life, such as the city's cultural diversity, modern architecture and engineering, rich cultural heritage, and high quality of education.
- Jeddah is a leading destination for international students and travelers. It has several public and private universities that provide a very high standard of academics. Jeddah is also the gateway to the Holy City of Makkah and hosts millions of pilgrims from around the world on

their way to Haji every year.

- Jeddah has been an example of modern architectural and engineering innovation since
- the 1980s. One of the city's major landmarks is 20 King Fahd's Fountain, the highest fountain in the world. It jets water as high as 312 meters (1024 feet) and can be seen from nearly everywhere in the city. Other landmarks include the NCB Tower, the IDB Tower, and the Jeddah
- 25 Municipality Tower. There are also plans to build the 1,000-meter high Kingdom Tower, which, when completed, will be the world's tallest building.

- During the 1980's, many works of art were introduced into Jeddah's public areas, making it one of the largest open-air galleries in the world. Modern sculptures, ranging from abstract works to traditional coffee pots and
 - airplanes, decorate the pedestrian streets and roundabouts of the city. There are also a number of museums and galleries to visit. Bayt Naseef in Al-Balad was once home to the wealthy merchant family who hosted King
- Abdulaziz Ibn Saud in 1925. Today, it houses a historic museum and heritage exhibits.
 - The historic center of Al-Balad is a charming blend of traditional houses and modern glass skyscrapers, and its huge marketplace features a combination of traditional sougs and designer boutiques. Today, huge efforts are being made to preserve its historical architecture.
- The city is also famous for its recreation. It is home to many famous football and athletic clubs. A light breeze cools the coast in the Corniche area, where visitors can eat at the many restaurants, relax by the beach, and have fun at the amusement park. And the beautiful coral reefs of the Red Sea are popular
- with scuba divers. There's always something interesting to do in Jeddah, the "Bride of the Red Sea."

وزارة العطو Ministry of Education 2022641444





▲ Abdul Raouf Khalil Museum and Mosque

After Reading

- A. Choose the meaning of the underlined words that best fits the reading context.
 - **1.** for 20 consecutive years (line 1)
 - a. recent
- **b.** an unbroken series
- 2. point out several aspects (line 6)
 - a. ideas
- **b.** ways
- **3.** a leading destination (line 10)
 - a. popular
- **b.** winning
- **4.** it houses a historic museum (line 39)
 - a. visits
- **b.** holds
- **5.** a combination of traditional sougs (line 44)
 - **a.** mixture
- **b.** series of numbers
- B. Mark which of the following things a visitor can do in Jeddah, according to the article.
 - 1. _____ You can meet people from different cultures.
 - 2. ____ You can study at university.
 - **3.** _____ You can visit the world's tallest fountain.
 - **4.** _____ You can see modern sculptures at Bayt Naseef.
 - **5.** _____ You can go shopping in Al-Balad.
 - **6.** _____ You can visit the Kingdom Tower.

▲ Bayt Naseef

- c. next or future
- c. features
- c. most important
- c. protects
- c. things joined

Discussion

What city would you like to live in? Why?

10 Project



• Work in groups. Select a town or city in your country or in the world. Present its features to the class and say why you chose it.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Do You Know Where It Is?





Writing

A. Write about Saudi Arabia. Create a chart to make notes on the advantages and benefits (assets) of the country and what you think it can achieve (aims) in the future.

Organize your chart around these themes: Family and Community, Education, Environment and Natural Resources, Culture and Recreation, Transportation, Tourism. Add a theme of your own.

- B. Read the extract from the Vision 2030 program.
 - Circle each asset · Underline each aim



Saudi Arabia has many natural resources, such as oil, gold and other valuable minerals. More importantly, it is blessed with the strength and potential of its people. The children of Saudi Arabia will create a great future and the government will support its people and country. The families of Saudi Arabia are a strong and important part of society. Families will receive all the help they need to raise their children according to Islamic values and help them develop their abilities. The country is rich in culture. More cultural events and activities will be organized to educate and provide entertainment. The government has a strong commitment to education and recreation. There will be more libraries, galleries and museums as well as sports facilities for everyone.

Health care and education will be available to all citizens making their lives happier and more secure. A healthy economy offers opportunities to large and small businesses. Quality services and facilities will attract investors from different countries. A renewed business environment will provide professional opportunities to all citizens.

A high-quality educational system that meets the needs of the job market will provide Saudi professionals with the necessary knowledge and skills.

Saudi Arabia is also blessed with a good location – in between Africa, Asia and Europe – which helps trade. It also has a beautiful natural environment with a stable climate, which will allow us to develop tourism and attract visitors.

Telecommunications and information technology will be developed in and around cities. This will make it easier for people to communicate across the globe and access information.

Government services will support the growth and development of private and non-profit organizations and help them to operate successfully.

- * Adapted from the text of the Vision Programs at https://vision2030.gov.sa/en and from the text that was drafted by the Council of Economic and Development Affairs as instructed by the Custodian of the Two Holy Mosques, King Salman.
- Compare the phrases you have underlined with your ideas from exercise A and share with a partner. Discuss your charts. How did your type of chart help you to organize your ideas?
- C. Make another chart to write lists of the assets in your city or neighborhood and what you think the aims should be for your city or neighborhood's future. Will you use the same style of chart that you made in A? Why? Why not?
 - Write an essay about the aims of your city or neighborhood.
 - Include ideas about how you, and other good citizens, can help your city to achieve these aims.

Writing Corner

Most forms of writing are organized in paragraphs.

- 1. Essays begin with an introductory paragraph that presents the main idea of the essay.
- 2• The main body of an essay may have one or many paragraphs. Each paragraph focuses on and develops a specific topic; there is usually a topic sentence.
- 3. At the end, there is a conclusion that sums up the main idea of the essay.



12 Form, Meaning and Function

The Definite Article: the

The definite article *the* comes before singular and plural nouns: **the** car, **the** cars.

Use the for specific objects or people that were introduced before or that are known. Do not use the with plural or noncount nouns when talking in general.

He is a tourist. **The** tourist is in Jeddah. What are **the** official languages of Canada?

Technology is used in classrooms.

Use the with the superlative.

Planes are **the** fastest means of transport.

Use the for objects that are one of a kind.

the Earth the sun the moon **the** stars the sky the sea

Use the with the names of oceans, seas, rivers, mountain ranges, deserts, groups of states, and monuments.

the Amazon **the** Eiffel Tower the Red Sea **the** United States **the** Arabian Desert **the** Alps

the National Museum the Pacific Ocean

		ords <i>home</i> , school, work, business, and vacation when used for their purpose.
-a	<u>hd</u> i	is <u>my</u> brother. He is in <u>Dubai</u> on <u>business</u> . Let's play <u>tennis</u> after <u>lunch</u> .
۵.	Wr	ite the definite article <i>the</i> where necessary.
	2.	When sun goes down at night, you can see moon and stars Burj Khalifa in Dubai is tallest building in world.
	4.	Great Pyramid of Giza is one of Seven Wonders of Ancient World Calligraphers used Kufic script to write first copies of Holy Qur'an Last year we went on vacation to island of Penang in Malaysia.
3.	Wr	ite the article a , an , or the where necessary.
	1.	bullet train can travel at speed of 300 km hour. It isn't as fast as airplane, but trip on express train can take shorter time.
		We usually play football in park on Saturday morning. In afternoon, we go for lunch at our favorite restaurant by beach.
		What makes Jeddah global city and one of best places to live in Middle East? Is it quality of life?
•		Cambridge is surrounded by green areas; quarter of population cycles around town, through parks, and along narrow streets.
• 7		coral reefs in Red Sea are popular destination for scuba divers.

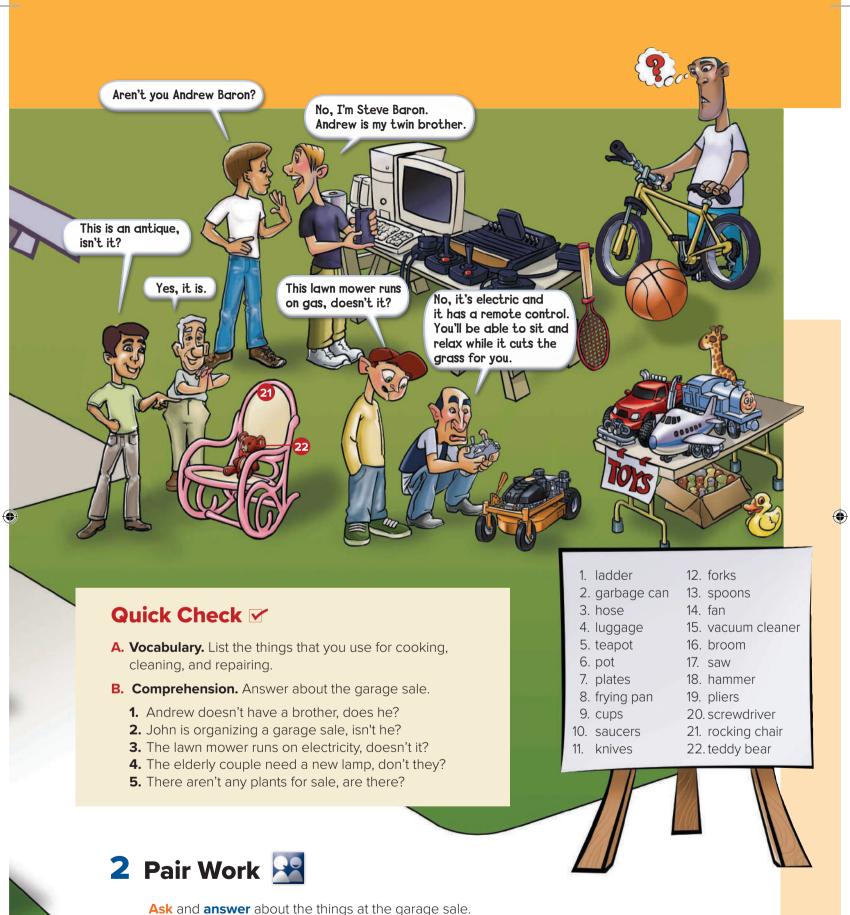
Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

وزارة التعطيم

7 It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?







<mark>صیلحتاا قرازم</mark> Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444 The lamp is a bargain, isn't it?

Yes, it is.

Yes, they are.

69

Those cups are cute, aren't they?

It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?

3 Grammar 👊



Tag Questions

Use tag questions to check information. With an affirmative sentence, use a negative tag. With a negative sentence, use an affirmative tag.

Affirmative Sentence (Negative Tag)

Your name is Ali Khalid, isn't it? You were born in Abha, weren't you? You live in Dammam, don't you? You studied in Dhahran, didn't you? You've graduated, haven't you? You're going to work in Riyadh, aren't you?

To agree with negative tags, answer yes.

Q: You're from Riyadh, aren't you?

A: Yes. I am.

Negative Sentence (Affirmative Tag)

Mariam isn't American, is she? She wasn't born in the United States, was she? She doesn't speak English, does she? She didn't work in a school, did she? She hasn't lived in the United States, has she? She isn't going to move here, is she?

To agree with affirmative tags, answer no.

Q: You aren't from Rivadh, are you? A: No, I'm not. I'm from Jeddah.

Negative Questions

We sometimes use negative questions to check information or to express surprise.

Isn't he tired of working there? Aren't you coming with us?

Haven't you finished your homework yet?!

Don't you live near the beach?

Be Able To

Use be able to to express ability and to talk about things you can or can't do.

He won't be able to play basketball today because he hurt his hand. I wasn't able to come to the park because I had a previous appointment. **Will** you **be able to** go out with us tomorrow?

A. Check information. Complete the tag questions.		
1. These toys are in good condition,	?	
2. You've had garage sales before,	?	
3. He didn't buy that fan,?		The state of the s
4. They weren't able to sell the tools,	?	
5. She found a set of nice crystal glasses,	?	
6. That vacuum cleaner works OK,	?	
7. We have lots of bargains here today,	? / /	
8. This lawn mower is really high-tech,	?	#
Pul Cill öylja Ministry of Education 202 70 1444		

- **B.** Write down some facts about your classmates that you think are correct. Then check the information with them.
- Your classmate was born in Dammam.
 - A: You were born in Dammam, weren't you?
 - B: Yes, I was.
- **C.** Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the pictures.
 - A: Was Ahmed able to fix the car?
 - **B:** No, he wasn't.









1. Hameed

2. the players

3. Adnan



4. Majedah



5. the students



6. the football fans

- **D.** Write negative questions for the following situations.
 - You just bought a new cell phone. Your friend is still deciding about whether to buy one.
- ? Aren't you going to buy one too?
 - **1.** You recognize an old friend at the mall. The friend doesn't recognize you.
 - 2. Your friend is eating popcorn and is not offering you any.
 - **3.** You are playing a board game. You want your friend to play the game too.
 - 4. Someone came and joined your group, greeted everyone, but forgot you.
 - 5. Classes start at eight o'clock. It's 8:30, and your brother is still in bed.
 - **6.** Someone you don't know left a message on your cell phone. Your friend asks if you called back. What does the friend say?

مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 71 13/4/22 6:46 PM

71

It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?

4 Language in Context





Prepare a guiz about historical facts, and play a game with a partner. Use tag questions when you are not sure of an answer.

- A: Which volcano destroyed Pompeii?
- B: Vesuvius destroyed Pompeii, didn't it?
- A: Yes, it did. You're right.
- **A:** Who invented the printing press?
- B: Da Vinci was the inventor of the printing press, wasn't he?
- A: No, he wasn't. It was Gutenberg.





▲ Pompeii, Italy

5 Listening



Printing press

Listen to the conversation and explain the misunderstanding between the two men in your own words.

6 Pronunciation



Listen. Notice the rising intonation in tag questions to confirm information. Then practice.

You're coming with us, aren't you?

That isn't your car, is it?

We haven't met before, have we?

We were here yesterday, weren't we?

7 About You 🔀



- 1. Have you ever mistaken a person for someone else?
- 2. Have you read or heard about stories of mistaken identities?
- 3. Have you ever been to a garage sale or a street sale?
- **4.** Have you ever bought something that you later didn't want? What was it?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022721444







Ted: You aren't from around here, are you?

Sean: No, I'm not. How did you guess?

Ted: Your accent.

Sean: Of course. No, I'm from Ireland,

Dublin actually.

Ted: My name's Ted.

Sean: How do you do? I'm Sean. So,

what do you know about Ireland?

Ted: Lots of Irish came over to the United

States in the past, didn't they?

Sean: Yes, they did.

Ted: And you speak Gaelic.

Sean: Yes, some Irish people do. They like to hold on to the tradition.

Ted: Is that so? So, what are you doing in Chicago?

Sean: I'm an exchange student.

Ted: I'll be happy to show you around the campus.



What do you think Sean answers?

- 1) That's nice of you, but I already know my way around.
- (2) Thanks. Are you able to meet me this afternoon?
- (3) Why don't you give me your number, and I'll call you?
- (4) Your idea:

Real Talk

How do you do? = a way to respond to an introduction Is that so? = a way to show surprise I'll be happy to... = a way to offer to do something for someone

show someone around = act as a guide

About the Conversation

- 1. Where is Sean from in Ireland?
- 2. What does Ted know about Ireland and the Irish?
- 3. What is Sean doing in Chicago?
- 4. What does Ted offer to do?



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Your Turn

Start a conversation with a stranger. Use the following expressions.

You aren't from around here, are you?

Expressions of surprise:

Is that so?, You don't say?, Really?, etc.

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 73 13/4/22 6:46 PM

It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?



9 Reading



Before Reading

What do you know about twins? Have you ever met any?

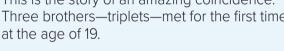


"Hi, Eddy. We're going to be in math class together again this semester, aren't we?" "Sorry. I'm not Eddy."

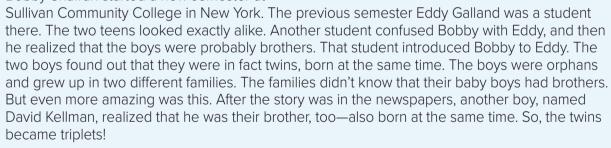
"Nice to see you again, Bobby."

- "Sorry. I don't know you."
- "You're Bobby, aren't you?"
- "No, I am not. I'm Eddy."

This is the story of an amazing coincidence. Three brothers—triplets—met for the first time



Bobby Shafran started a new semester at



There are many touching stories of orphans who meet for the first time as adults. Another well-known story of twins is that of Daphne Goodship and Barbara Herbert. They met for the first time at the age of 39. When they met, each was wearing a beige dress and a brown jacket. Blue was their favorite color. They both liked their coffee cold and black. Well, perhaps, that isn't very surprising, is it? But how about these similarities? They both fell down some stairs at the age of 15, and later they had problems with their ankles. They both used the same recipe book and sometimes cooked the same meal on the same day. And to scientists who studied them, they had similar personalities: they were talkative, and they laughed a lot. Because of this, they were called the "Giggle" twins.

Scientists like to study such cases of twins. They want to answer the classic question, "What's more important—heredity or environment?" Studies with twins like the Giggle twins seem to make a case for heredity, don't they? The twins grew up in different environments, but still the twins are very similar in many ways. But are all the similarities just coincidences? What do you think?



وزارة العلاجيا Ministry of Education 2022741444



- A. Answer the guestions about the reading.
 - **1.** How did Bobby and Eddy first meet?
 - 2. What happened when one brother read the newspaper?
 - **3.** How were the Giggle twins similar?
 - **4.** Why were they called the Giggle twins?
- B. Match the following words in the reading with their definitions.
 - **1.** __ coincidence
- a. three children born at the same time
- **2.** confuse
- **b.** think wrongly that a person is someone else
- **3.** ___ orphan
- c. a situation in which two things happen together by chance
- **4.** ___ heredity
- **d.** a child who has lost his parents
- **5.** ___ triplets
- e. what you get from your parents
- **6.** ___ touching
- f. having a strong emotional effect
- C. Role-play an interview with one set of twins/triplets in the article. Work in small groups, and take turns being "twins" or "triplets" and interviewers. Present your interviews to the class.

Discussion

- **1.** What do you think that cases like the Giggle twins show?
- 2. What do you think is more important in people's personalities, heredity or environment? Can you give any examples? Think about your own family and people you know.

10 Project 🍱



Prepare an advertisement for a garage sale.







SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 75 13/4/22 6:46 PM



7 It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?



11 Writing



- A. Read about a coincidence. Number the paragraphs and the sentence in the correct order.
 - One afternoon, I was walking around the campus looking for a place to eat lunch when suddenly I heard someone call my name. I turned around. "You're Sean, aren't you?" said a familiar voice.

 The three of us went for lunch that afternoon, and Mike and I did a lot of catching up. Since then, I hang out with him and Lee almost every day.
 - I arrived here in Chicago two months ago as an exchange student. During my first week at the college, everything was still a bit confusing. I felt lonely most of the time. Sure, I had met a few students in my classes, but I hadn't made any friends yet.
 - "Mike, what are you doing here in Chicago?"
 - It took me a second to realize who it was. To my surprise, it was my cousin, Mike. I hadn't seen him in five years because his family had moved to the U.S. He was with Lee, a student in one of my classes.
 - "Well, I live in Chicago and I'm studying economics here at the college. When Lee told me there was an Irish student in one of his classes, I had no idea it was you! What a small world!"



Writing Corner

- Use simple past to talk about completed past events.
 Suddenly I heard someone call my name. I turned around.
- 2. Use the past progressive* (was/were + verb-ing) to talk about actions that were in progress when another past event happened.
 - I was walking around the campus when suddenly I heard someone call my name.
- 3. Use the past perfect* (had + past participle**) to talk about an action that happened before another action in the past.
 - I hadn't seen him in five years because his family had moved to the United States.
- * You will practice the past progressive in Unit 9 and the past perfect in Unit 12.
- ** See a list of irregular verbs and past participles on page 162.
- B. Look at the writing task in C. Before you write, take notes in the event chain diagram.



- C. Write about a strange coincidence or chance meeting. Here are some examples for ideas.
 - 1. I have a big family, and I don't know them all. One day when I was in a café...
- **2.** Iswas taking a summer English course in London. A student sat next to me in class, and we started a conversation. The student mentioned...

مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 202**76**1444



12 Form, Meaning and Function

Suggestions

Use <i>should</i> and <i>shouldn't</i> to ask for an	nd give	suggestions.
--	---------	--------------

A: What **should** we do tonight? **B:** I don't know, but we **shouldn't** stay home. **A: Should** I buy this racing bike? **B:** No, you **should** buy the mountain bike.

Use can and could to give possible suggestions.

A: What should I cook for dinner? B: You could make spaghetti.

A: Let's go to the park this afternoon. **B:** That's a good idea. We can have a picnic.

Note: Can and can't are also used for ability or inability.

A: Can you go out tonight? B: Sorry, I can't. I have to study.

Use Why don't...? and Let's to give suggestions.

A: Why don't we order a pizza? B: No. Let's eat out instead.

A: Let's go to the park. B: OK. Why don't we take our bikes?

To accept suggestions, we say: OK; That's a good idea; Sure; All right; or That sounds good.

To politely refuse suggestions, we say: Sorry, I can't; Let's... instead.

Δ	Fill in	each	hlank	with a	suitable	word	Then	nractice	the	conversation	with a	nartner
М.	1 111 111	Each	Dialik	VVILLIC	a Sullable	word.	111611	practice	นาษ	COLIVEL2911011	vvilii a	partite

Fahd: (1)	go get some pizza and hang out by the beach.	

Imad: Sorry, I (2) _____. I have to clean my room and start packing for college.

Fahd: That's right. You're leaving next week, aren't you? (3) __ don't you let me help you? Then we (4) _____ go out later.

Imad: Thanks. That **(5)** _____ good... What **(6)** _____ I do with all my stuff? I (7) ______ take it with me because my room at the college is really small.

Fahd: Well, you (8) _____ leave it here at your parents' house.

Imad: No, I (9) _____. My parents want to give the room to my brother, so I have to move all my things out.

Fahd: Then, why (10) _____ you have a garage sale?

Imad: Hmm... That's a good (11) ______ get rid of some old things that I don't use anymore.

Fahd: And you (13) _____ make a bit of money, too!

Imad: True. I (14) _____ use the money to buy books. What day (15) _____ I have it?

Fahd: (16) _____ don't you have it on Saturday?

Imad: All right. (17) _____ start by putting aside the things I don't want. Pass me that skateboard and those binoculars.

Fahd: No, you (18) _____ sell those! You (19) ____ keep them.

Imad: Do you want them? Why (20) _____ you come to my garage sale on Saturday?

B. Work in a group of four. Plan a school trip. Think about: where your class should go, when you should go, how you should get there, and what activities you should do. Use language for giving, accepting, and refusing suggestions.

A: Why don't we go to the museum?

B: Museums are boring. Let's go to the zoo instead.

حتا قالوs. The zoo sounds good.

2022 - 1442: I agree. I think we should visit the zoo.





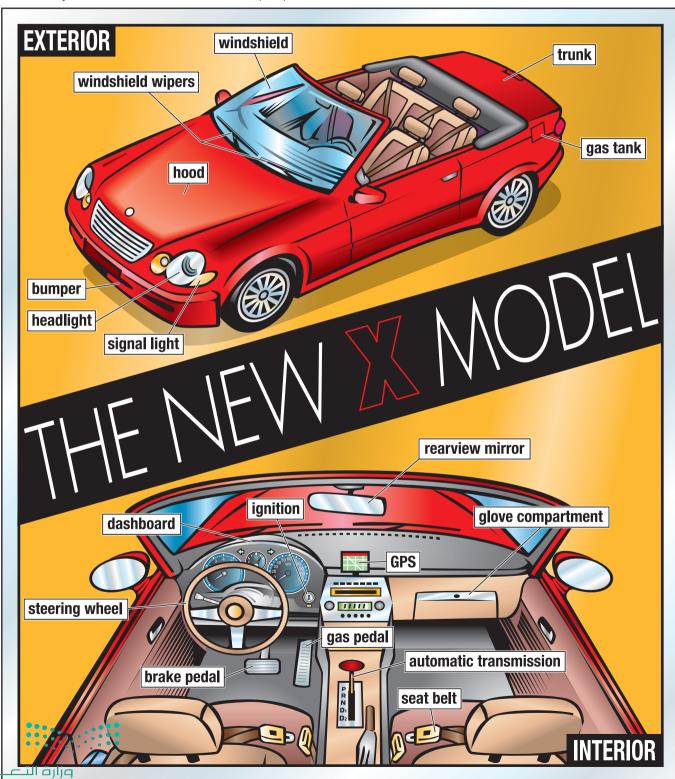
8 Drive Slowly!



Listen and Discuss



Are you interested in cars? What do people look for in a car?



Ministry of Education 2022781444



How many of these road signs do you know?



Speed Limit



Pedestrian Crossing









Danger

Stop

You must always wear your seat belt.

You should drive carefully, and you should not speed.

You must obey the road signs.



Parking Area

No Passing



No Parking

Quick Check ✓

- A. Vocabulary. Match the two words.
 - 1. steering ____
- a. shield
- **2.** wind ____
- **b.** belt
- **3.** dash ____
- c. sign
- 4. seat
- d. mirror
- **5.** rearview ____
- e. wheel
- **6.** road ____
- f. board
- B. Comprehension. Answer about the car and the driving instructor.
 - **1.** Does the car have a global positioning system?
 - 2. What kind of transmission does it have?
 - 3. Is it a four-door car?
 - 4: What does the instructor want people to do?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

2 Pair Work 🔀



- **A.** Ask and answer about the signs.
 - What does that sign mean?
 - You must not pass.
- **B.** Give advice about driving.
 - What's the first thing a driver should do?
 - Drivers should put on their seat belts.
 - What shouldn't a driver do?
 - Drivers shouldn't drive too quickly.

3 Grammar 👊



Modal Auxiliaries: Must/Mustn't/Must Not and Should/Shouldn't

Use *must* to talk about laws and rules. Use *should* to give advice.

You **must** stop at the traffic lights. You **should** drive under the speed limit. You **must not** park on the sidewalk. You **shouldn't** eat when you're driving.

Note: Must is stronger than should. It has a more formal or official tone.

Adverbs of Manner

Adverbs of manner are normally formed by adding -ly to an adjective. They express how something is done.

How did he drive? He drove slowly. How did she walk? She walked quickly.

Adjectives that end in / double the /: careful \rightarrow carefully

Note: Sometimes an adjective and an adverb have the same form:

He's a **fast** driver. He drives **fast**. He's a hard worker. He works hard.

The adverb form of good is well. He's a good player. He plays well.

A. Rewrite the sentences. Use adverbs of manner.

•	Adel is a careful driver.	Adel drives carefully.
	 Badr is an aggressive driver. Stunt pilots fly in a dangerous way. Fadwa and Amal are enthusiastic readers. Saeed is a really good player. Sabah is a quiet talker. Khalid is a hard worker. Majid and Ali are fast runners. 	

B. Complete the conversation. Use adverb forms of the adjectives in parentheses. Then practice the conversation with a partner.

A: Well, my son Brian drives _____ (reckless). He doesn't stop at stop signs, and he's usually over the speed limit. He's always in a hurry.

B: My son Alexander drives ___ __ (good), but he sometimes drives too __ (fast). I'm afraid he's going to

have an accident one of these days.

A: Well, Brian got a ticket because he was driving too _____ (fast). He had to go to a special class for

people who drive _____ (dangerous).

But he still doesn't drive _____ (careful). Next time he is going to lose his license. Ministry of Education

2022301444









1.	Δ:	ľm	afraid	ľm	running	out o	of das
	~.	1 111	anaid	1 111	1 411111111	Out	n qus.

	\ / -	- 1-		1 - 1
ж.	You	cn	\cap	\sim
┏.	100	-DII	Ou	L

- **2. A:** The sign says 80 kilometers per hour, and I'm doing 90.
 - B: Then you must_
- 3. A: I'm lost. I don't know which way to go.
 - **B:** I think we should ___
- **4. A:** I need to make a phone call. Can you please hold the steering wheel?
 - B: You must not ____
- **5. A:** The car won't start. There's plenty of gas. I wonder what the problem is.
 - **B:** You should _____
- **D.** Work with a partner. Discuss what you shouldn't/must not do in the situations shown by these signs.















مرارت التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Drive Slowly!

4 Language in Context

رابط الدرس الرقمي

- 1. Mark the things that characterize an aggressive driver.
- 2. Mark the things you should/must do when you encounter one.
- **3.** Compare and discuss your answers with a partner.



Aggressive Drivers	What to Do
Drive dangerously and recklessly.	Get out of the way.
Go through stop signs and red lights.	Challenge them to show you aren't scared.
Are courteous to other motorists.	Ignore them and their gestures.
Tailgate—drive closely behind the car in front.	Avoid eye contact.
Blow their horns and flash their lights.	Blow your horn.
Let others pass them.	Report them to the authorities.
Other:	Other:

5 Listening



Listen. Brandon is having a driving lesson. Mark the things he does right and wrong.

		Right	Wrong
1.	start the car		
2.	hold the steering wheel		
3.	obey the speed limit		
4.	park		



6 Pronunciation



Listen. Notice the vowel sound of /ə/ in **should** and **must** when they are pronounced quickly. Then practice.

You **should** obey the driving laws. You **must** be 18 to get a license. You **shouldn't** pass on the right. You **mustn't** go over the speed limit.

About You



- **1.** What is the driving age in your country?
- **2.** Is the driving age the same for motorcycles?
- **3.** What is the speed limit in your town/city? Is it too high or too low?
- **4.** Do you see a lot of aggressive drivers?
- ••• What do they do?
- 5. What are the most common traffic problems in vour town?

وزارة التحليد Ministry of Education 2022321444

- **6.** What is the major cause of car accidents in your country?
- 7. What do you think are the difficulties of driving in your country?
- 8. Do you think it is a good idea to have speed cameras on some roads?
- **9.** Have you ever seen or been in a road accident? What happened?



Father: George, I want you to drive slowly and carefully,

and put on your seat belt. We have plenty of time.

George: What time is your flight, Dad?

Father: At 6:00 P.M.

George: That's in three hours! You have two extra hours.

The trip to the airport is less than an hour.

Father: You should always arrive at least two hours

before departure. We might run into traffic at this

time of day. Why are we taking this road?

George: Because it's quicker.

Father: You can't be serious! You should use the highway.

It's faster because it's more direct. Turn right

at the next traffic light. Hey, don't go so fast. Slow down!

George: Dad, the speed limit here is 70 kilometers per hour, and I'm doing 60.

Father: Be careful! You almost hit that car. You have to watch out for traffic.



surprise or disbelief

Hey = used to attract someone's attention I'm doing 60. = I'm driving 60 kilometers per hour.

Your Ending

What do you think George's response is?

- 1 OK, Dad. You know the first rule of safety: Don't talk to the driver.
- 2 OK, Dad. You drive.
- (3) Dad, why don't you get a cab?
- **4**) Your idea: _____

About the Conversation

- **1.** How does the father want George to drive?
- **2.** What should George do before he starts the car?
- **3.** What does the father say about the time to arrive at the airport?



مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Your Turn

- **A.** Role-play this situation with a partner: You're going to the airport. You want to leave early.
 - Your brother is going to drive.
- **B.** Role-play this situation with a partner: You're going somewhere in a taxi. You aren't in a hurry. The driver is speeding and driving recklessly.

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 83 13/4/22 6:46 PM

8 Drive Slowly!



9 Reading



Before Reading

- 1. On which side of the road do people drive in your country?
- 2. On which side of the road do people usually walk?

Is Right, Right?

Why must you drive on the right side of the road in some countries and on the left side of the road in other countries? Investigate the question, and you find a lot of confusion on right versus left. About a quarter of the world drives on the left, and most of those countries used to be British colonies. In England people drive on the left, but on escalators they stand on the right, so that people who are in a hurry can go up on the left. In Japan, they drive on the left, too, but people usually stand on the left on escalators.

There are different explanations for the use of right versus left. Some people believe that it is a natural tendency to walk or drive on the right. This is because most people are right-handed.

We can look back in history for reasons people move on the right or left of the road. Some people say that in Europe hundreds of years ago, people rode their horses on the left. This way, their sword was between them and anyone who was coming toward them in the opposite direction. They were ready to pull out their sword and fight to defend themselves with their right arm. There is also evidence that ancient Greek, Egyptian, and Roman troops used to march on the left side. And in Rome, they made it a law in the 1300s. So when and why did the right side become popular?

One idea is that in the 1700s, people in France and in the United States started to use



wagons with several pairs of horses and to drive on the right side of the road. It was easier for the drivers to sit on the left and control the horses with a whip in the right hand, and it was safer if other vehicles passed on the left so the drivers could see the distance between vehicles. Some people say that in England, people always drove on the left, and in France, people always drove on the right.

In any case, Napoleon, a ruler of France, ordered people to drive on the right side in the early 1800s. France conquered many countries at that time, and so these countries drove on the right. But France didn't conquer England, so England kept its custom of driving on the left.

In the twentieth century, there was a trend to the right. Many cars were made in the United States, and they were made for driving on the right side of the road. As recently as 1967, Sweden changed its laws. Now people in Sweden must drive on the right.

So right or left? Just follow the customs of the country where you are—and be sure to drive carefully on that side!

<mark>صلحتا قاتم المحليم</mark> Ministry of Education

202**34**1444



- A. Answer true or false.
 - 1. ____ In England, people drive on the left.
 - 2. ____ In Japan, people drive on the right and walk on the left.
 - 3. ____ In France, people probably always drove on the right.
 - **4.** ____ Many countries use left or right because of England and France.
 - **5.** _____ Some countries changed to driving on the right.
- B. Match. Find the meaning of the word in bold type from the reading.
 - 1. ____ Historians investigate questions about past events. They read old records to find answers.
 - **2.** ____ There is some **confusion** over the history of the use of the right or the left. People aren't sure of what happened.
 - **3.** ____ At the end of the war, the large country conquered the small one.
 - **4.** ____ In some countries, the **custom** is to drive very fast on large roads.
 - **5.** ____ There was a **trend** toward energy-efficient cars at the start of the twenty-first century.



- a. took control of (a country, city etc.) through the use of force
- **b.** uncertainty about what happened
- c. a direction of change, a tendency
- d. something that is usually done
- e. study and research

Discussion

1. What are some problems due to people driving on different sides of the road in different places?

2. Do you think that there should be one standard for the whole world?

3. What problems do you think Sweden had when it changed from left to right?

10 Project



Work with a partner. Research and prepare a list of driving tips and safety rules for new drivers. Make a poster to display in class.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



8 Drive Slowly!



11 Writing



A. What is the legal driving age in your country? In other countries? Read about getting a driver's license in Canada. In groups, discuss whether you think this is a good system.

In most provinces of Canada, the legal age to start driving an automobile is 16. However, new drivers must successfully complete several stages before they get a full license.



New drivers must first pass a written exam to ensure that they understand the rules of the road. Then they are issued a Learner's License. They are able to drive only under the supervision of an adult for one year, and they must place an **L** sign on the back of the car.



When young drivers are ready, they must pass a road test with an examiner. Then they are issued a Novice License. They are able to drive on their own or with one passenger in the car, and they must display an \mathbb{N} sign on the back of the car. After two years of safe driving as a novice, they must pass another road test to get a full license.

B. Complete the sentences with words from the box. Find the meaning of any new words.

r	eflexes	immature	responsible	accident	distracted	impulses	rage	attention
1.	Due to t		many adolesce y are prone to			their emotion	ons and	

2.	leenagers are easily	by their cell phone or
	by other people in the car. As a result,	they don't pay careful
	to the road.	
3.	Teenagers are still mentally young and	. For

- 3. Teenagers are still mentally young and ______. For this reason, they are not _____ drivers.
- **4.** Since adolescents don't have much experience behind the wheel, they don't have the ______ to react quickly. Consequently, they are more likely to cause an _____ than an experienced driver.



Writing Corner

- 1. Use phrases to express cause/reason: because (of), since, as, and due to.
- 2. Use phrases to express result: for this reason, as a result, and consequently.
- C. Complete the chart with notes about why the legal driving age should be over 16.

Reasons	Results

vrite an essay to argue why the driving age in some countries should be raised to 18 or older. Use علات your notes from the chart and ideas from this unit.

Ministry of Education 202**36**1444



12 Form, Meaning and Function

Requests

Use can, could, will, or would for requests.

Request

Agreeing

Refusing

Can/Could you help me? **Will/Would** you help me?

Sure. No problem. Of course.

Sorry, I can't. Not now. I'm busy.

Commands

Use the imperative for commands.

Turn right at the intersection. **Don't park** the car there.



Reporting Requests and Commands

ask/tell + object/pronoun + infinitive

"Can you help me?" my mother asked me.

"Turn right," said Omar to his brother.

"Don't be late," said their parents.

My mother **asked me to help** her. Omar **told his brother to turn** right. Their parents **told them not to be** late.

- A. Report the requests and commands.
 - 1. "Put on your seat belts," the father said to his children.
 - 2. "Would you drive us to the airport?" Abdullah's cousins asked him.
 - 3. "Please don't drive so fast," the woman said to her husband.
 - **4.** "Don't ride your motorcycle in the rain," said the mother to her son.
 - 5. "Could you please fill up the gas tank?" the man asked the gas station attendant.
 - 6. "Can you check the brakes?" Ahmed asked the mechanic. "They don't work well."
- **B.** What did the driving instructor say? Write the requests and commands.

I had my third driving lesson yesterday. It was the first time I drove on the highway. The driving instructor told me to turn onto the highway carefully. He asked me to drive faster, so I sped up. There was a truck moving slowly in front of me. He told me not to tailgate, so I passed the truck. Then he told me to watch out for the motorcycle. I changed lanes quickly to avoid the motorcycle. Then the driving instructor asked me to pull over and stop the car because I was driving dangerously What did I do wrong?

4	
l	
2	
3,	
4.	
التعطي - التعطي	

phway.

The to told be go gerously.

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

EXPANSION Units 5–8

Language Review



- A. Choose the sentence that means the same thing.
 - 1. The cost of living in Rome is just about the same as in Paris.

 - **a.** Rome is cheaper. **b.** There isn't much difference. **c.** They're both expensive.
 - **2.** My new air conditioner isn't as noisy as the old one.
 - **a.** The new one is just as **b.** The new one is noisier. **c.** The new one is less noisy.
- **3.** This is the most crowded restaurant I've ever been in, but it's always like this.
 - todav.
- **a.** It's more crowded **b.** It's as crowded as usual. **c.** It's not usually this crowded.
- **4.** The taxis are as slow as the buses during rush hour.

 - **a.** Taxis are faster. **b.** Buses and taxis are slow.
- **c.** Buses are faster.
- **5.** Our TV screen is as large as yours, but yours has a higher definition.
 - size.
 - **a.** They're not the same **b.** One has a better definition.
- **c.** They're exactly the same.
- **B.** Complete the sentences with the present perfect or the simple past form of the verb.
 - 1. Sahar and Asma _____ (be) friends for 10 years, and they call each other often.
 - 2. Qassim _____ (work) as a guide before he started his travel agency.
 - 3. The team _____ (win) all their games so far this season.
 - **4.** I _____ (not see) a good film on TV for a long time.
 - **5.** Ashraf _____ (live) in a dorm since he went to college.
 - **6.** Hameed and Adel (meet) when they were at school.
- C. Complete each sentence with a tag question.
 - 1. Mr. Morris is a driving instructor, _____
 - 2. Fadwa was on the phone at the time of the earthquake, _____
 - 3. Mahmoud didn't have a driver's license, _____
 - **4.** The tourists in the pedal cab were excited, _____?
 - **5.** Your new bike is going to arrive next week, _____
 - 6. Mr. Yunus won the Nobel Peace Prize in 2006, _____
 - 7. Michael Phelps won eight gold medals at the Beijing Olympics, ___
 - 8. You've lived in this neighborhood for a long time, _____
 - **9.** The football teams didn't play in this rain, _____?
- **D.** Use **should/shouldn't** or **must/must not**. More than one answer may be possible.
 - **1.** You _____ drive so slowly on the highway. You'll get a fine.
 - 2. People _____ throw litter in the streets. It makes the town look ugly.
 - **3.** He _____ throw out the sandwich. Eating isn't allowed in here.
- **4.** You honk your horn. It's a hospital area.
- put his cell phone away while he's driving. It's the law.

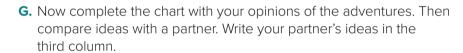
 Speed, or else I'm getting out of your car.

202281444



- **E.** Complete the sentences using an adverb.
 - 1. Khalid isn't careful when he drives. He doesn't drive ______
 - **2.** Mariam is a really good writer. She writes very ______.
 - **3.** Fahad takes his time when he eats. He eats ______.
 - **4.** My father works 14 hours a day. He really works _____.
 - **5.** There wasn't much traffic on the road. They got home _____
 - **6.** Ahmed likes extreme sports. He enjoys living ______.
- **F.** Look at the pictures of adventures on this page, and say which you have or haven't done.
- Y I've been go-kart racing. OR I've never been go-kart racing.
 - **1**go-kart racing
 - 2 exploring a cave
 - 3 mountain climbing

- 4 white-water rafting
- **5** skydiving
- 6 riding a camel



Adventure	My Opinion	My Partner's Opinion
the most exciting		
the cheapest		
the most dangerous		
the shortest		
the longest		
the most tiring		
the craziest		

- **H.** Work in a group. Defend your opinions of the adventures.
- White-water rafting is less dangerous than skydiving, and it's just as exciting.











89

EXPANSION Units 5-8

2 Reading



Before Reading

Discuss the pros and cons of the following adventure sports.

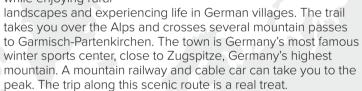
Adventure Trips

Pedaling through the

Germany

Bavarian countryside is the way to go for many visitors. You can bike through green valleys and past rivers, including the Danube, while enjoying rural

Biking in the Alps,



Click here for details: www.pedalps.com

Skydiving: Flying High in the Rockies, USA

Have you ever dreamed of flying? We can offer you a unique opportunity. SKYHI is top ranked and is the largest and most reliable skydiving facility in Colorado. Every year, people take more than 35,000 jumps at our facility. Conquer your fear, and get an awesome view of the snowy peaks from about 3,000 feet (900 meters) above the Rockies. For those of you who want to relive your greatest adventure over many years, our camera operator will accompany you and film your own personal jump video, or you can even carry your own camera!

Location: 1 hour from Denver, Colorado

Information: www.skyhidive.com



White-Water Rafting, Chile

We invite you to come and explore the best-kept secret of Patagonia, an amazing place where glacial lakes are connected by hundreds of kilometers of rivers. The Futaleufu River offers 40 miles (64 kilometers) of top white-water rafting. Come and experience the turquoise-colored rapids rushing through the Andean mountain range. This is the safest ride there is, even for beginners. We've been providing rafting trips for more than 30

For more information, click here: www.andesrafting.net





Comments from customers about their experience



 The instructor told me to stand up and walk toward the exit door. I thought, "What if my parachute doesn't open?" I've never been so frightened in my life. My camera operator was ready. I couldn't back out now. So I let myself go out the plane. Those were the most exciting and enjoyable seconds that I have ever experienced. I saw the ground getting closer and closer, and I heard the wind rushing by. I checked my altimeter and

pulled the ripcord of my parachute. There was a strong jerk. Suddenly it was calm, and I watched the beautiful landscape below as I floated peacefully to the landing area.

Mitch Taylor



I've ridden cross-country for several years, but this was my first cycling tour—and I'm looking forward to the next one. It was spring, there was still some snow on the slopes, and the countryside was green and full of wildflowers. I could smell the fresh scent of the plants in the air when the breeze blew against my face. Biking is much more fun than being stuck inside a car or on a tour bus. I love to be in contact with nature and hear all the sounds: the birds, the trees, the water in the streams. Going uphill can be tiring sometimes, but the views are worth the effort. **Daniel Garcia**

At first, I was scared, but after a while, I got used to going up and down. The bumps, spins, and shakes were the least of my worries. I've gone to amusement parks since I was a kid, but this was a different matter. It was the real thing, and it was up to us to control the experience and stay safe. I paddled to get away from the rocks, and heard the sound of the boat hitting the water. It splashed up inside the boat, and I got completely soaked. But I wasn't worried about the freezing water. My objective was to get to the end of the journey safely. It was a great feeling of accomplishment when it was over.

Neil Davenport

After Reading

Fill in the information from the texts. Not all the rows will be filled.

	Mitch Taylor	Daniel Garcia	Neil Davenport
Kind of adventure			
Feel			
Hear			
See			
Smell			

Discussion

What adventure trips do people take in your country?





Work with a partner. Write a brochure for an adventure trip in your country. Present it to the class.

وزارة العصلو Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

EXPANSION Units 5-8

4 Chant Along



I've Missed You!

Hello, Mom! Hello, Dad! It's been a long, long time Since I've made a call. It's been a long, long time Since I've seen you all. You have always been in my heart.

> Listen, son! We've thought about you All this time. You've been constantly on our mind.

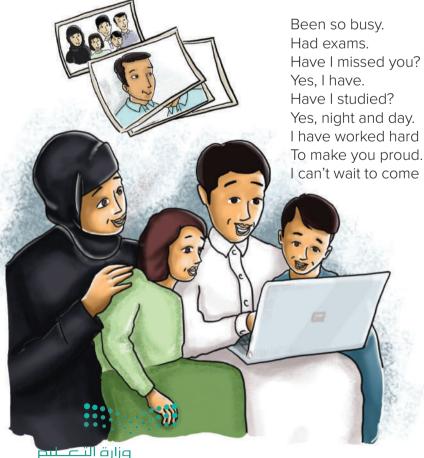
We've been so far, far apart.

Been so busy. Had exams. Have I missed you? Yes, I have.

I have worked hard

I can't wait to come home.

Little brother, is that you? You have grown an inch or two! Little sister, how are you? I have wondered what is new. I've missed you all so terribly. Have you thought about how much You mean to me?



Ministry of Education 2022921444

Vocabulary

- A. What do the following words mean in the chant?
 - 1. constantly
 - a. forever
- **b.** all the time

c. a occasionally

- 2. proud
 - a. pleased
- **b.** disappointed
- c. worried

- 3. wonder
 - a. be amazed
- **b.** dream
- c. ask oneself

- 4. terribly
 - a. not well
- **b.** very much
- c. just a little not very much

93

- **B.** Explain the meaning of the following sentences in your own words.
 - 1. You have always been in my heart.
 - 2. You've been constantly on our mind.

Comprehension

Answer true or false.

- **1.** _____ The student hasn't seen his family for a long time.
- 2. ____ He's in a distant place.
- **3.** ____ He hasn't studied very hard.
- **4.** _____ The parents want to know if their son has missed them.
- **5.** ____ The student doesn't want to come home.

Writing

Imagine you are the student. Write an email to your family. Say what you have been doing, why you miss them, and so on.

Discussion

- 1. Have you ever called a friend or family member that you hadn't seen for a long time?
- 2. What was his/her reaction?
- 3. What did you talk about?
- **4.** Imagine you have to go far away to study. What would you miss most?

5 Project



Dog survey in your class to find out who communicates long-distance. Find out what methods of long-distance communication are the most popular.

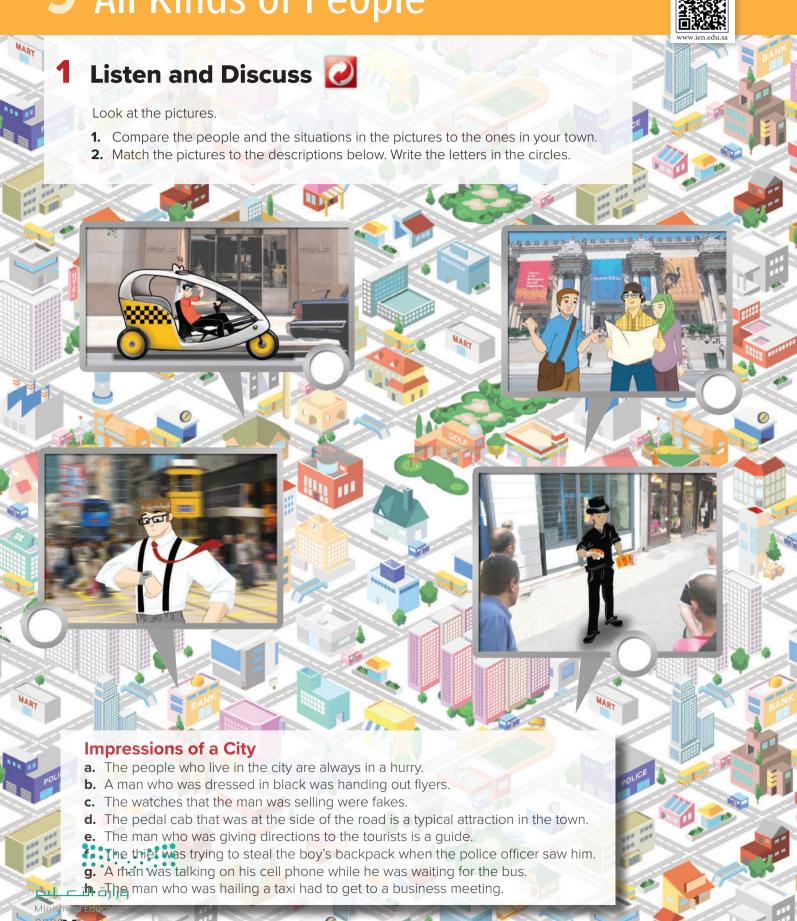
وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

9 All Kinds of People

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 94







Quick Check ✓

- A. Vocabulary. Look at the picture for 10 seconds. Then close your book. Write down a list of things you saw in the street. Compare with a partner.
- **B.** Comprehension. Match the two parts of the sentences.
 - 1. The people who live in the city ___
 - 2. The man was talking on the phone ____
 - 3. The officer who was on duty ___
 - **4.** The man who was • halling the taxi ____
 - **'5**: The man was giving directions ____
- a. saw the thief stealing the backpack.
- **b.** was in a hurry.
- c. to some tourists who were lost.
- **d.** seem to have little time.
- e. while he was waiting for the bus.

2 Pair Work



Ask and answer about the pictures.

- What was the man doing while he was waiting for the bus?
- He was talking on his cell phone.
- Who is that man?
- He's the one who was handing out flyers.

وزارة التعطو Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

All Kinds of People



3 Grammar 👊



Relative Pronouns: Who, That, Which

Relative clauses add information about a noun in the main clause.

Use the relative pronoun who or that for people.

Use the relative pronoun that or which for things and animals.

The man was talking to the tourists. He was friendly.

The man who/that was talking to the tourists was friendly. (relative clause)

The horse pulled the carriage. It was black.

The horse **that/which** pulled the carriage was black. (relative clause)

Past Progressive with When and While

Use the past progressive:

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022961444

- To talk about events that were happening when another event happened. I was looking in the store window when the thief grabbed my bag.
- To talk about actions that were happening at the same time. He was driving while he was talking on his cell phone.

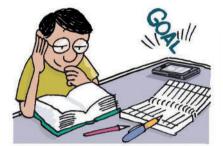
۵.	Complete the definitions by matching the two parts	S.	
	1. An athletic person is someone who	a.	makes you laugh.
	2. A talkative person is someone who	b.	is intelligent.
	3. An efficient person is someone who	c.	dresses well.
	4. A rude person is someone who	d.	speaks a lot.
	5. A clever person is someone who	e.	likes to be with others.
	6. A fashionable person is someone who	f.	does things well and quickly.
	7. A funny person is someone who	g.	isn't polite.
	8. A friendly person is someone who	h.	enjoys sports.
3.	Complete the sentences.		
	1. We were waiting for the bus when		
	2. I was crossing the street when		
	3. They were sitting in the café when		
	4. Adnan was buying ice cream when		
	5. You were sleeping when		

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 96 13/4/22 6:46 PM

- **C.** Work with a partner. Make sentences to describe the actions in the pictures.
- ? It was raining while Yahya was washing the car.



Yahya







1. Faisal

2. Mr. Lewis

3. the people



مراحتا قال **10.** I like teachers who _____

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444





4. Fatima

5. the couple

6. Hameed

D. Complete the ser	ences with who or that .
----------------------------	--

	 The neighbor lives downstairs is very quiet. The flowers grow in the city garden are very color. I'd like to introduce you to the person organized the theory. That isn't the camera is on sale. The actor was playing the lead role was very funny. 	ne conference.
	6. Isn't that the book you were reading last week?	
	7. The clothes designer made this dress was very cre	eative.
	8. Mom, may I eat the mango is in the refrigerator?	
E.	Complete the sentences with your ideas.	
	1. I like cars that are	
	2. I like people who are	
	3. I like books that have	
	4. I like clothes which are	
	5. I like weather that is	
	6. I like games that are	
	7. Juke stores that offer	
•	8. 1 ke foods that are	
•	9. I like friends who	

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 97 13/4/22 6:46 PM

All Kinds of People



4 Language in Context

Work with a partner. Give a definition of an adjective from the words in the box to describe a person. Your partner guesses the adjective. You can use a dictionary for help.

A: Someone who makes you laugh is ...?

B: Funny.

absentminded / athletic / clever / friendly / funny / generous / hardworking / honest / kind / lazy / optimistic / patient / persuasive / pessimistic / polite / quiet / reliable / rude / selfish / serious / talkative

Listening



Listen. Look at the picture of a gallery opening. Who said what? Write the numbers in the boxes.



Ш	The	man	who	İS	taking	а	snack	<

- \Box The waiter who is carrying the tray
- ☐ The artist who is talking about his painting
- ☐ The man who spilled his coffee

- ☐ The person who is taking the photo
- \Box The man who is leaving the gallery
- ☐ The man who is talking to a reporter
- ☐ The man who is complimenting the artist

6 Pronunciation



Listen. Notice the stress in the adjectives. Then practice.

talkative generous ath**let**ic persuasive ef**fi**cient re**li**able

pessi**mis**tic absent**mind**ed

About You



- **1.** Have you ever bought anything on the street? What?
- Have you ever talked to a reporter? Where?

ந்த நிது you ever ridden in a pedal cab? Ministry of Educa When? Where?

2022981444

- **4.** Have you ever been to an art gallery? Describe the art you saw there.
- **5.** Describe yourself. What kind of person are you? Use the adjectives in the box in Language in Context above to help you.



Lars: I realize it's part of your job, but it's a real treat for me to be invited to these charity events. Do you know many of the celebrities here?

Ken: Of course. Quite a few. The tall man who was standing at the door when we came in is Colin Parker.

Lars: Isn't he the one who started his own airline?

Ken: That's right. And that's Tony Kramer, the editor of Success. I worked with him on the magazine while I was in London.

Lars: Is that a reporter with him?

Ken: No, no. That's Patrick Logan, the football player.

Lars: Really? I mean, he looks different in a suit. I didn't recognize him. And who's that guy over there? The one with the turtleneck sweater.

Ken: That's B.W. Actually...



What do you think Ken answers?

- (1) We went to college together.
- (2) He was my boss.
- (3) I interviewed him once.
- 4 Your idea: _

Real Talk

a real treat = something very pleasant and enjoyable Of course. = to answer yes in a strong way I mean = a phrase to introduce an explanation of what one has said

About the Conversation

Answer true or false.

- 1. Colin Parker is the man who has his own airline company.
- 2. Tony was the director of a British TV station.
- **3.** Ken worked with Tony while he was in London.
- 4. Tony is talking to a reporter.
 - **5.** B.W. is the man who is wearing a

مال حتا قالو turtleneck sweater.

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444





Your Turn

Imagine you were a guest at this charity event. You are looking at the pictures while a friend is asking you all about the different people.

99

All Kinds of People



Reading



Before Reading

- 1. Do you know about people who work for charity?
- 2. Have you ever worked for charity? What was your experience like?

Simple Ideas, BIG Results

Muhammed Yunus, Nobel Peace Prize Winner

Muhammed Yunus, often called "the world's banker to the poor," received the Nobel Peace Prize in 2006 for his pioneering work against poverty. Yunus said he would use the \$1.35 million prize money to "find more innovative ways" to help the poor.

Yunus founded the Grameen Bank in 1976 with just \$27 from his own pocket. The idea came to him while he was teaching economics at Chittagong University in southern Bangladesh, which is one of the poorest nations in the world. He and his students started an experimental project: They lent poor people small amounts of money. The people used the money for their own small businesses; for example, to buy straw to make stools. Until then, the local people relied on local moneylenders who were not



always fair.

Since then, the Grameen Bank model has been duplicated in more than 100 countries. Today, the bank has over 9 million borrowers and over 2,500 branches in over 81,000 villages in Bangladesh. The bank also started a program to give poor people a loan of about \$9 to purchase small items such as bread, candy, pickles, and toys. Receivers of the loans then resell the goods to supplement their income. The bank reports that it has lent

\$24 billion over the past 38 years and claims a high repayment rate— 99.6 percent. Nowadays Grameen Banks are also in developed countries. One hundred people in Queens, New York, were among the first borrowers of Grameen America. The total number of borrowers worldwide is 100 million.

Mohammed Abdul Latif Jameel, Businessman and Philanthropist

Mohammed Abdul Latif Jameel has received many awards for his humanitarian work to solve the crisis of poverty around the world. In 2012, he was named "Saudi Volunteer

of the Year" for establishing job creation programs in Saudi Arabia and the Middle East. Unemployment is the main cause of poverty, and Jameel realizes that governments need the support of businesses to solve the problem. Jameel says, "My father taught me an important lesson in running a business: never to forget that life is not just about you—it is about what you can do for others."



25 Jameel studied at MIT where he joined the Poverty Action Lab. In 2005, he made a huge donation to the organization, and it was renamed J-PAL in honor of his father, Abdul Latif Jameel. J-PAL is a group of expert researchers whose mission is to reduce poverty in the world by finding scientifically-based solutions. In Saudi Arabia, he established the Abdul Latif Jameel Community Initiatives program (ALJCI). One project of ALJCI is Bab Rizg Jameel (BRJ), which focuses on creating job opportunities. Between 2003 and 2012, BRJ created more than 230,000 jobs in •• 🔐 the Kingdom and over 300,000 in the Middle East. ALJCI also supports projects in business financing, education and

training, health, and art and culture.

جيلـدـتاا قرازم

Ministry of Education







After Reading

- **A.** Choose the correct meaning according to the text.
 - 1. poverty (line 2)
- a. pollution

c. disease

- 2. to rely on (line 9)
- **a.** to accept

c. to depend on

- **3.** loan (line 13)
- **a.** money you borrow

- **b.** money you earn
- c. money lost

- **4.** to establish (line 20)
- a. to create
- **b.** to buy

b. being poor

b. to trust

c. to give money to

- **5.** unemployment (line 21) **a.** lack of money
- **b.** lack of education
- c. lack of jobs

- **6.** to reduce (line 27)
- a. to make more
- **b.** to stop
- c. to make less
- B. Answer the questions about the reading.
 - **1.** Why did Yunus receive the Nobel Peace Prize?
 - 2. What work was he doing when he thought of the idea?
 - 3. How did his system work?
 - 4. How long has he had the Grameen Bank?
 - 5. Why was Jameel named "Saudi Volunteer of the Year"
 - 6. What did Jameel learn from his father?
 - 7. What is the purpose of J-PAL?
 - 8. What kind of projects does ALJCI support?
- C. Complete the chart.

?	- A
tif Jameel alike?	

How are Muhammed Yunus and Mohammed Abdul Latif Jameel alike?		

Discussion

In your opinion, who do you think offers more to society—Muhammed Yunus, who helps people to start their own businesses and earn a living, or Mohammed Abdul Latif Jameel, who helps create job opportunities?

Project 23



Research someone "who has made a difference" in your country or to the world. Present your findings to the class.



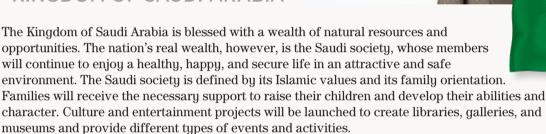
Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

9 All Kinds of People

11 Writing



VISION قيق ألك المحادثة المحادثة العربية السعودية KINGDOM OF SAUDI ARABIA



The Kingdom's fast growing economy will offer equal opportunities for all citizens through a high quality educational system that meets the needs of the job market. The business environment will be renewed in order to attract entrepreneurs, as well as large or small businesses. Improved facilities and services will attract international trade and make Saudi Arabia the transportation center for Europe, Africa, and Asia. Telecommunications and information technology, including high-speed broadband, will be developed in and around cities and urban areas.

Government services will be effective and transparent to facilitate the growth and development of private and non-profit sectors. Many government services and assets will be privatized and monitored by the state, to ensure a better profit and a successful performance.*

* Adapted from the text of the Vision Programs at https://vision2030.gov.sa/en and from the text that was drafted by the Council of Economic and Development Affairs as instructed by the Custodian of the Two Holy Mosques, King Salman.

- A. Read the text about Saudi Arabia's 2030 Vision.
 - 1. Underline and make notes about key changes and events in the chart.

Families	Culture & Entertainment	Economy	Government

2. Which verb forms are more frequent in the text? Why?

B. With a partner, choose a topic and write about your vision of:

• • schools in the future

• * my city / town / village in the future

Use your imagination. Draw one or more pictures, if you wish.

مرارت التحطيم Ministry of Education 202**402**444



12 Form, Meaning and Function



Can/May/Could

We use the modal verbs can, may, and could to ask for permission.

Ask for Permission Can I ask you a question?	Agree Yes, of course.	Refuse I'm sorry, but	
May I speak to the manager? Could I make a reservation?		That's not possible	May / Could are more formal
We use would like (to) for polite	_	I would like to book a ro	oom.
	·		
Complete the telephone convers	ations. Then practice	e them with a partner.	
A. Asking for information			
A: Good morning. Greenwich	Bank.		
B: Hello. (1)		•	200
A: (2), the ma	nager is busy at the	moment. (3)	_ I help you with something?
B: No, thank you.			
A: Well, if you (4)			
B: Sure. My name is	He can reac	n me at	·
B. Making a reservation			
A: Wyatt Hotel. Good afternoo	on.		
B: Hello. I (1)	to book a room for M	1ay 14th and 15th.	6320
A: (2) And he			
B: Just one. (3)		•	
A: Sure. The price is		I have your	name
and credit card number, place B: My name is			0
D. Wy flame is	Wy Visa cara is		
C. Ordering a taxi			
A: Speedy Cabs. How (1)	we help	you?	
B: Hello. I (2)		olease.	TAXI
A: (3) you giv			
B: Yes, it's			
A: All right. A driver will be the B: That's great. (4)			
b. Mat's great. (+)	·		
D. Making an appointment			0
A: Pinewood Medical Clinic. L	isa speaking.		
B: Hello. My name is		en's patient. (1)	I make an appointment to
see the doctor on Tuesday	•	able appointments on Tues	day
A: (2) that we	aon thave any avan arnina?	apie appointments on tues	uay.
A: Let me see. (3)		o'clock?	
` '			

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 103 13/4/22 6:46 PM

المال المال

Ministry of Education

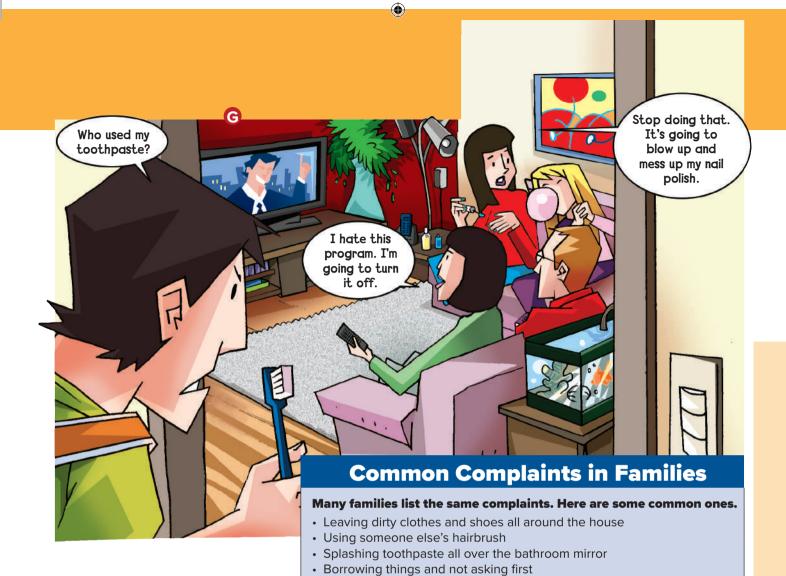
2022 - 1444

*FYI: For Your Information

10 Who Used My Toothpaste?







Not cleaning your room

• Spending a lot of time in the bathroom · Playing the TV or video games very loudly

Quick Check 🗹

- **A. Vocabulary.** Complete the expressions based on the pictures.
 - 1. Have you done _____
 - 2. Have you fed _____
 - **3.** I can't stand ______.
 - **4.** Who used my ?
- B. Comprehension. Answer the questions about the pictures.
 - 1. Why hasn't the boy done the dishes yet?
 - 2. What can't the father stand?
 - 3. What has the girl just given the fish?
 - **4.** What should the sister do after she uses the hair dryer?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

2 Pair Work 🔀



- A. Ask and answer about household chores.
 - Have you taken the garbage out yet?
 - Yes, I've already done it. OR No, I haven't done it yet.
- B. Imagine you are part of the family in the pictures. Make requests.
 - Please stop using my hair dryer.
 - Don't you remember? You lent it to me.
- C. Ask and answer about yourself.
 - What do people do around the house that you don't like?
 - I can't stand people eating while they're using the computer.

10 Who Used My Toothpaste?



3 Grammar 👊



Present Perfect with Already, Yet, Just

You can use the present perfect to talk about events that happened before now. It is possible that the event happened earlier than expected.

Questions Affirmative (+) Negative (-)

Have you done the dishes **yet**? Yes, I've already done them. No, I haven't done them yet. Have you **already** washed the clothes? Yes, I've **just** washed them. No, I haven't washed them yet.

Verb + Gerund

Use the gerund form (which ends in -ing) after the following verbs:

avoid	enjoy	give up	imagine	mind	stop
can't stand	finish	hate	keep	miss	suggest

He can't stand waiting in line. I don't enjoy sitting in the sun.

We **miss being** with our friends. They **stop playing** tennis in the winter.

Two-Word Verbs

Two-word verbs are common in English. They have a verb + particle. Object pronouns always come between the verb and the particle.

Turn down the TV. **Turn** the TV down. Turn it down. **Put away** your clothes. Put your clothes away. Put them away.

A. Work with a partner. Ask and answer about the pictures.

A: Have you done the dishes yet?

B: Yes, I've already done them.











B. Work in small groups. Which of the following do you enjoy doing? Which of the following do you dislike doing? Add your own ideas.







C. Rewrite each sentence with a two-word verb in two ways.

Turn on	the I	V.

Turn the TV on.	Turn it on.
1. Put away the toys.	
2. Clean up the mess.	
Take out the garbage.	
4. Turn off the light.	
5. Throw away these old shoes.	

D. Make sentences with the words. Use gerunds.

dessert / eat / after meals / can't resist / l

- 1. she / clean / can't stand / the house
- 2. live / our grandparents / enjoy / in the country
- 3. the children / hate / their ice cream / share
- **4.** eat / Mom's food / we / miss
- **5.** my sister / my toothpaste / use / stop / have to
 - **6.** the workers / paint / the house / finished

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

I can't resist eating dessert after	meals

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 107 13/4/22 6:46 PM

10 Who Used My Toothpaste?



4 Language in Context



Mark the things that annoy you. Then compare your list with a partner.

I can't stand it when people:

show up late
don't put things away
don't give back what they borrowed
don't clean up after meals
don't take out the garbage
use up all the milk, sugar, etc.



5 Listening 🔊

Others: _



Ken and Jake are away at college. Listen and mark the things they miss from home.

6 Pronunciation



Listen. Notice the different sounds of vowels followed by *r*. Then practice.

1	2	3	4
/ɛr/	/ɔr/	/1r/	/ər/
sh ar e	ch or e	h er e	w or d
h air brush	sciss or s	ear	h ear d

	Ken	Jake
family		
homemade food		
friends		
basketball		
video games		
laundry		
privacy		

7 About You 📓



- **1.** Do you have obligations at home? What do you have to do?
- 2. Do members of your family share household chores?
- **3.** Do you share a room? If yes, do you have any problems?
- **4.** Do other family members use your things? What things?
- **5.** What things shouldn't you share?
- **6.** What things do you think it is possible to share?
- 7: What do you think are the most common problems of people sharing the same space?

مراد قال الكالم
Ministry of Education 2022108444











Sarah: Yes, Kareem has already gone. At long last!

Amal: How long did he stay?

Sarah: Almost three months. He was doing a research project here at the university. When he arrived, I said, "Make yourself at home." And he did just that.

Amal: But he seemed like such a nice young man.

Sarah: Oh, he is, and I was happy to help out. The trouble is that he took over our house. He used our things and never put them back. He never cleaned up after himself, and I've never seen anyone eat so much! One day I walked into the living room, and there was Kareem eating and making a mess, with his feet on the furniture...

Amal: That's a bit too much, isn't it?

Sarah: That's what I thought.

Amal: So what did you say to him?

Real Talk

At long last! = Finally!

That's a bit too much. = This has gone too far.

About the Conversation

1. How long did Kareem stay?

2. Was he we come at his aunt's house at first?

3. What complaints did Sarah have about her nephew?

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444





Your Ending

What do you think Sarah said to Kareem?

- (1) Kareem, please eat in the kitchen. Not in here.
- (2) Kareem, I don't know how you behave at home, but in our house we have some rules.
- (3) Kareem, don't you think it's time you started cleaning up after yourself?
- (4) Your idea:

Your Turn

A. Role-play the conversation. Make up a reply for Kareem.

B. Interview Kareem about his stay with his aunt.

10 Who Used My Toothpaste?



The game was like, cool. Like, you know what I mean.





Before Reading

Think of the three things that other people do that irritate you the most. Compare your list with a partner.



Complaints

What can't you stand? What drives you crazy? What really gets under your skin?

Let it out. Here's your

Add your complaint to

Standing in line at checkout counters at the supermarket.

Listening to people talking on their cell phones in restaurants. It's annoying.

When people talk on their cell phones and drive.

People who use words like cool and stuff all the time. Also, people who use the word like all the time in conversation. The word takes the place of adjectives, nouns, and intelligence.

Rushing to the phone and finding out it's a telemarketer who's calling.

People who lost weight and now try to control what others eat.

People who are always late, and people who are late and don't apologize.

When salespeople try to talk you into buying something you don't want or need.

People who don't say "please" and "thank you."

When people enter a door or an elevator and don't hold it open for the person who is right behind them.

I can't stand people who chew with their mouths open.

It drives me insane when I call up a company and I get "Press 1 for A, 2 for B, 3 for C," and so on. Or the common assurance "Your call will be answered in the order it was received," and then you have to wait forever while they put you on hold.

When people don't give up their subway or bus seats to seniors or to those with disabilities.

People who stand in the way of others who want to use an escalator or doorway.

People who change the TV channel without asking when someone else is clearly watching.

People who stand in someone else's line of sight in front of the TV during the last 30 seconds of any show or game.

People who "borrow" stuff without asking and don't give it back.

When someone constantly interrupts you while you're speaking.

When people leave a pile of dirty dishes in the kitchen for others to clean up.

Do you have a complaint?

the list.

ADD

Press 1 for..... Press 2 for.....

Press 3 for.....



وزارة التعليص

Ministru of Education

After Reading

A. Match the two-word verbs with their meanings.

1. ____ let out

a. learn

2. ____ find out

b. let someone have

3. ___ clean up

c. phone

4. ___ give back **d.** express yourself freely

5. ___ call up

e. make things neat

6. ____ give up

f. return

B. Write three expressions that mean "to irritate."

2. _____

C. Answer true or false about the complaints in the forum.

In general, people disapprove of the following:

1. _____ people talking on cell phones in public places

2. ____ people on a diet

3. people who don't wait their turn

4. ____ people who do the dishes right after a meal

5. _____ people using an escalator instead of the stairs

Discussion

1. Which of the things listed in the **Reading** do you think show bad manners?

2. Compare and discuss your complaints with your classmates.

3. What is the most common complaint in your class?



10 Project



Interview one or two young people who have left home to attend college. Find out what they miss most about nome. Present your findings to the class.

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444





10 Who Used My Toothpaste?



11 Writing 🚺



A. Read the information in the Writing Corner. Complete the

se	ntences with <i>who, that, which, whose</i> , or <i>where</i> .
1.	It's inconsiderate when passengers on the bus put their shopping bags other people want to sit.
2.	I can't stand people throw litter in the street.
3.	I don't care for people ring tone is too loud.
4.	It irritates me when people don't put things back they found them.
5.	It gets on my nerves when people say things aren't true
6.	I hate those advertisements continuously pop up on my computer screen.
7 .	It bothers me when I have coffee with a friend is constantly texting on his phone.
8.	Car alarms go off in the middle of the night are really annoying.



Writing Corner

We use relative clauses to make clear which person or thing we are talking about.

- 1. Use who or that for people. I can't stand people who/that cut in front of the line.
- 2. Use which or that for things. It's annoying when salespeople try to sell you things which/that you don't need.
- 3. Use whose to show possession. I dislike people whose behavior is rude.
- 4. Use where for places. It annoys me when people park their cars on sidewalks where pedestrians walk.
- B. Complete the chart with notes on impolite behavior and how it affects others.

Impolite behavior	Effects

••• C. Write two entries for an Internet forum about impolite behavior and how it affects others. Use your increase from the chart and other ideas from this unit.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 202212444



12 Form, Meaning and Function

Can't/Must

Use can't and must to speculate about something. Use must to say we are sure of something. Use can't to say that we think something is impossible.

It **can't** be rain. There isn't a cloud in the sky. It **must** be the neighbor. She's watering the plants on her balcony.

So...That/Such...That

So and such make the meaning of an adjective or adverb stronger. So...that and such...that are used to show cause and effect.

so + adjective/adverb + that

He is **so** fast **that** he won the race.

He ran **so** fast **that** he won the race.

so + many/much + noun + that

He has **so many** books **that** he can hardly carry them. I have so much homework that I can't go out tonight.

such + adjective + noun + that

It was such a difficult test that none of the students did well.

1. C	omplete the sentences with can't or mu	ust.	45
1.	Badria couldn't sleep last night. She _	be tired.	
2.	Ahmed's just joking. He	be serious.	lu E
3.	You haven't eaten all day. You	be hungry.	Soft
4.	Look how tall he is! He	_ be over two meters tall.	
5.	It be six o'clock alread	dy. Where does the time go?	

- **B.** Complete the conversation with *can't, must, so,* or *such*. Then practice the conversation with a partner.
 - A: This (1) _____ be your apartment!

6. That's impossible. It ______ be true.

- **B:** Don't you recognize it?
- A: Not at all. It was (2) _____ run down that I wondered why you wanted to buy it.
- B: Well, it was (3) _____ cheap that I could afford it. And it has (4) _____ a beautiful view of the harbor.
- **A:** But...
- **B:** I know. It was (5) _____ a mess that I couldn't stand it. The paint was (6) _____ old that it was coming off the walls, and the floors... There were just (7) _____ many things to fix that I took some time off work to renovate.
- A: You did this yourself? You (8) ______ be joking. You did (9) a good job that it looks professional.
- B: Thanks. I just have one complaint. I worked (10) __

مال تا التالي hard that I'm exhausted. I need another week off to rest.

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444





11 Making Choices



Listen and Discuss 🕢

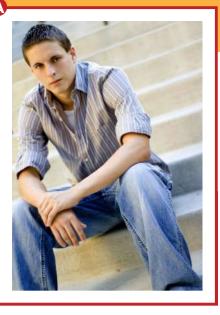


Read the quotations, and give your comments.

If I don't wear cool clothes, I won't fit in. But who cares?



If Victor doesn't wear fashionable clothes. he won't fit in with the crowd. But he doesn't mind. He likes to have his own personal style.



Tennis involves a lot of traveling, and so I'll be away from my family a lot. But there are many benefits, such as visiting a lot of countries, meeting interesting people, and learning about different cultures.

If Fahd becomes a professional tennis player, he won't see his family very often. But he'll visit new places and meet new people.



If I study for this test, I'll pass.

If Jimmy studies, he'll probably pass. But he won't be able to go to the football match with his friends.



If I buy the gold bracelet, I'll spend a lot of money.

Sabah wants to get her daughter a graduation gift, but she thinks the gold bracelet is too expensive. She'd rather save the money for her daughter's college studies.

Ministry of Education 2022114444

The Department of Roads and Highways says that if it builds a new highway, it will bring a lot of development to the area.

> The local farmers would rather keep the scenic route. They don't want a lot of traffic and pollution in the area.



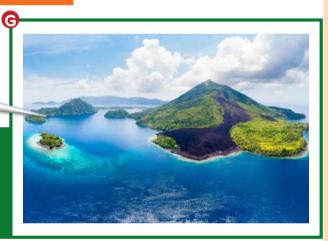


If I speed along this road, I might get a ticket or even have an accident.

Omar had better not speed along this road, or he might have an accident.

If we build a resort on this site, it will generate lots of jobs for the people on the island.

> Conservationists are against building the resort because they say it will interfere with the environment.



Quick Check ✓

A. Vocabulary. Match the words with the definitions.

- **1.** _____ to study
- a. advantage
- **2.** _____ to fit in
- **b.** a fine
- **3.** ____ a ticket
- c. to prepare for a test
- **4.** _____ benefit
- **d.** with beautiful views
- **5.** _____ scenic
- e. to be similar to or to blend with
- **B.** Comprehension. Answer *true* or *false*.
 - 1. _____ If Jimmy doesn't study for the test, he won't learn anything.
 - **2.** ____ If Sabah buys the bracelet, she won't save money.
 - 3. _____ If Omar speeds on that road, he won't get into trouble.
 - **4.** _____ If Fahd becomes a professional tennis player, he ... won't have to travel.
 - 5. f they build the resort, it won't cause any problems.
 - _ If they don't build a new road, they won't spoil the peace and quiet.

صلحتاا قاأزم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

2 Pair Work 🔀



Ask and answer about the people's comments.

- What will happen if Jimmy studies for the test?
- He might get a good grade, and he will pass.
- What will the conservationists do if they try to build the resort?
- They'll speak out.

11 Making Choices



3 Grammar **1**



Conditional Sentences with Present and Future Forms

You can use conditional sentences with if to talk about causes and results.

Present Facts

Use the simple present tense in both clauses.

If you cook an egg in the microwave, it explodes.

If you put water in the freezer, it becomes ice.

Future Facts

Use the *simple present* in the *if*-clause and the *future* with *be going to* or *will* in the result clause.

If Saeed gets the job, he'll be very happy.

If Imad doesn't go to college, he's going to be very sorry.

Use *may/might* in the result clause to suggest something is possible, but not certain.

If Noura doesn't do the homework, she may fail the class.

If Imad doesn't go to college, he might not get a good job.

I'd Rather

2022116444

Use I'd rather (= I would rather) to talk about preferences.

A: Do you prefer to drive along the scenic route or take the highway?

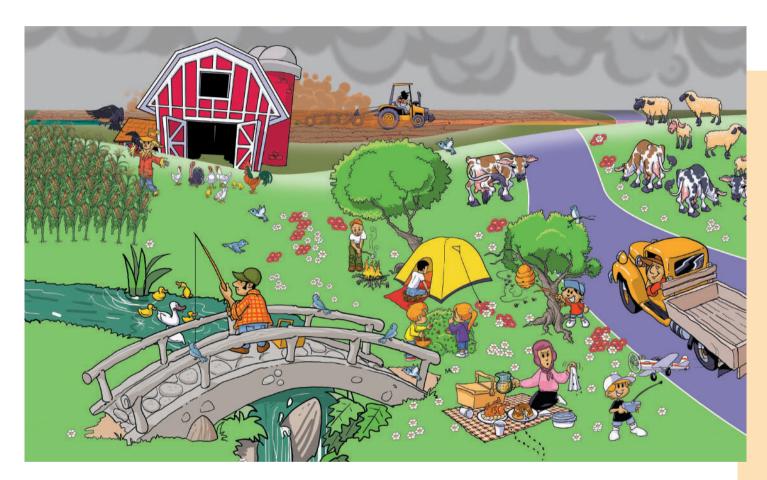
B: I'd rather drive along the scenic route.

A. Complete the	he sentences about facts. Use the simple present or <i>will</i> in the second clause.
1. If you	(heat) water to 100 degrees Celsius, it (boil).
2. If they	(climb) up to 4,000 meters, they (need) oxygen.
3. If you	(not cross) its path, the snake (not bite) you.
4. If we	(get) this 4K television, we (see) the game better.
5. If you	(mix) flour and water, you (end up) with batter.
6. If he	(not obey) the speed limit, he (get) a ticket.
	a partner. Say what will/might happen in the following situations. e the scenic route,
1. If we take	e the scenic route,
	end the day in the country,
3. If we ren	t a boat,
4. If we brin	ng a picnic lunch,
	ite some friends to come along,
	a:



- **1.** If she leaves the food on the ground, ____
- 2. If the cow crosses the road, ____
- **3.** If the boy doesn't stop hitting their nest, ____
- 4. If the man catches a fish, ____
- **5.** If it rains on the farm, ____
- **6.** If the toy plane crashes, ____

- a. he'll be pleased.
- **b.** the boy won't be happy.
- c. the ants will take it.
- **d.** it'll be good for the farmer's crops.
- e. the truck might hit it.
- f. the wasps will sting him.



- **D.** Make up your own questions and answers with *if* about the picture.
- 📍 Question: What do you think will happen if the government builds a highway along this route?

Answer: If they build a highway, a new shopping mall will go up.

If they build a highway, there won't be any cows in the field.

- E. What would you rather do? Share your choices with a partner.
- live in the city / live in the country I'd rather live in the country than live in the city.
 - 1. get a job / go to college
 - 2: 1 in the sun / sit in the shade
 - 3: cook dinner / wash the dishes
 - **4.** live in an apartment / live in a house
- 5. travel by train / travel by plane
- **6.** go to the beach / go to the mountains
- 7. have cold weather / have hot weather
- 8. eat at home / eat at a restaurant

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 117 13/4/22 6:46 PM

11 Making Choices



4 Language in Context

How will the following things affect your life? Discuss in small groups.

If I don't go to college, I might not get a good job.

go to college learn English well save some money move to another town travel to other countries get good grades get a scholarship get a lot of money



Listening



- A. Listening to the radio program with representatives of the Farmers' Association and of the Highway Department on the issue of the road. Which of the arguments are mentioned in the program? Check them.
- B. Listen again and write F if the representative of the Farmers' Association says it or **H** if the representative of the Highway Department says it.
- C. Discuss whether you support the Farmers' Association or the Highway Department. Give reasons for your position.

		Check if Mentioned	F (Farmer) or H (Highway)
1.	People will lose a scenic route.		
2.	Few people use the scenic route.		
3.	Factories will pollute the river.		
4.	Drinking water will be bad.		
5.	No new housing will go up.		
6.	Factories won't dump chemicals into the river.		
7.	The river is polluted already.		
8.	Farmers can buy new farms.		
9.	The development will create hundreds of jobs.		
10.	Farmers won't be able to find new land.		

6 Pronunciation



Notice the common consonant clusters at the beginning of words. Then practice.

sp	tr	cr	pr	gr
speed	traffic	crowd	pr efer	grow

About You



- 1. Have you ever had to make a difficult choice in your life? What were the options? What were the positive and negative results?
- 🛂 Have 🚾 ever helped a friend to decide about a personal dilemma? Tell about it.
- 3. What are the most common important choices young people in your country have to make?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022118444

8 Conversation 🚇



Adel: What are you doing on the weekend?

Faisal: My plans are still up in the air.

Sometimes there's nothing interesting to do, but this weekend I have three good choices.

I don't know which one to do.

Adel: What are the three things? I might be

able to help you make up your mind.

Faisal: OK. First, Fahd has just graduated from college, and he's invited me

to dinner. If I don't go to Fahd's graduation, he's going to be very hurt. I'm one of his closest friends, you know. Second, Khalid invited me to spend the weekend at his family's house at the beach. Third, the airshow is taking place, and Tarig asked me to go with him this weekend.

Adel: What's your preference?

Faisal: I'd much rather go to the airshow. If I

don't go this weekend, I may not get

another chance to see it.

Adel: It seems to me, you should do what

> you feel like doing. If you go to the airshow, explain to Fahd and Khalid why you're going. I'm sure they'll

understand.

Real Talk

up in the air = undecided make up your mind = decide It seems to me = a way to introduce an opinion ▲ Saudi Hawks performing aerobatics (Souq Okaz, Taif, Saudi Arabia, 2017)

About the Conversation

- **1.** What are Faisal's plans for the weekend?
- 2. What are his choices?
- 3. What will happen if he doesn't go to Fahd's graduation?
- **4.** What will he regret if he doesn't go to the airshow?
- 5. Whatedo you think Faisal should do?



Your Turn

- **A.** Role-play the conversation. Suggest what you think Faisal should do on the weekend.
- B. You have been invited to two events on the same day. Discuss with a partner what you will do at each one. List the positive and negative results of your choices.

Making Choices



Reading **III**



Before Reading

Have you ever had to make a serious decision in your life? Discuss.



The story goes that in the fifteenth century, in a tinu village near Nuremberg, Germanu, lived a family with 18 children. In order to keep food on the table for his large family, the father-a goldsmith by profession—worked almost 18 hours a day.

Despite their hopeless situation, two of the Dürers' elder children had a dream. They both wanted to pursue their talent for art, but they knew full well that their father could never afford to send either of them to Nuremberg to study at the academy.

After many long discussions, the two boys finally worked out a pact. Albert said, "I'll go down in the mines. With my earnings, I'll support you while you attend the academy for four years. When you complete your studies, you'll support me, either with the sales of your artwork or, if necessary, also by working in the mines."

His brother Albrecht agreed and went off to Nuremberg to study art at the academy. Meanwhile, Albert went down into the dangerous mines and, for the next four years, financed his brother, whose work at the academy was almost an immediate sensation. Albrecht's etchings, his woodcuts, and his oils were far better than those of most of his professors, and by the time he graduated, he was beginning to earn high fees for his works.

When the young artist returned to his village, the Dürer family held a festive dinner to celebrate Albrecht's triumphant homecoming. After a long and memorable meal, Albrecht rose at the head of the table to thank his beloved brother for the years of support that had allowed Albrecht to fulfill his ambition. His closing words were, "And now, Albert, blessed brother of mine, it is your turn. Now you can go to Nuremberg to pursue your dream, and I will take care of you."

All heads turned to the far end of the table where Albert sat, tears streaming down his pale face, shaking his lowered head from side to side while he sobbed and repeated, over and over, "No... no... no... no."

Finally, Albert rose, wiped the tears from his cheeks and said, "No, brother. I cannot go to Nuremberg. It is too late for me. Look what four years in the mines have done to my hands! The bones in every finger have been smashed, and lately I have been suffering from arthritis so badly in my right hand that I cannot make delicate lines on parchment or canvas with a pen or a brush. No, brother, for me it is too late."

In order to show his gratitude to Albert, Albrecht Dürer drew his brother's abused hands with palms

together and thin fingers stretched skyward. He called his powerful drawing simply Hands, and the entire world almost immediately opened their hearts to his great masterpiece.



Note: Albrecht Dürer is a famous artist, but there is no historical confirmation for this inspiring story, which appears to have been recently invented.

وزارة الحكلام Ministry of Education 2022120444

After Reading

- A. Explain the following expressions in your own words.
 - 1. could not afford
 - 2. to work out a pact
 - 3. to fulfill his ambition
- B. Now in your own words explain the brothers' choice.





▲ Albrecht Dürer House, Nuremberg, Germany

- C. Answer true or false.
 - 1. ____ The father worked very hard as a tailor in order to support his family.
 - **2.** ____ The two boys were talented and wanted to become artists.
 - **3.** _____ The father didn't have enough money to send his sons to the academy.
 - **4.** One brother would stay at home while the other went to Nuremberg.
 - **5.** _____ By the time he graduated, Albrecht's works were already known.
 - **6.** _____ Albrecht came back home to fulfill his part of the deal.
 - 7. ____ His brother Albert couldn't go to the academy because he had broken fingers.
 - **8.** _____ Albrecht drew his brother's hands to express his gratitude.

Discussion

What do you think about the saying: "No one ever makes it alone!" Discuss in a group, and give examples.

10 Project



As a class, discuss local issues like the one about the highway in the **Listening** on page 118. Choose an issue and discuss the positive and negative aspects of each side. Role-play radio interviews like the one in the Listening, in which people who support different sides of the issue are interviewed.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



11 Making Choices



I won't risk failing again!



A. Read the article about making choices. Circle the gerunds.

Making Choices

Your life is a result of the choices you make. Some everyday choices are simple and usually have very little impact on your life, while others can have serious consequences on your future.

Deciding what to wear or what to eat for lunch, for example, is usually of very little consequence. If you choose not to wear a jacket on a cold day, the worst thing that can happen is that you may come down with a cold for a few days. Choosing not to study for a test, however, could have more serious consequences. If you don't study, you will probably get a low grade or fail the test. Yet, sometimes making "bad" choices like these can help you learn to make "good" ones in the future. The next time it's cold, you will consider wearing a jacket. And the next time you have a test, you will study hard so that you won't end up failing.

But life also has more important choices to make, such as deciding on a career to follow or which university to attend. Making decisions like these is often difficult, so it's important to think about them carefully. One way to do this is to make a list of the positive and negative aspects before deciding. After comparing them, the right choice may seem clear. Another thing you can do is ask someone that you trust for advice. An older member of the family or a teacher who has had more life experience will be able to guide you in the right direction.

Remember that you are responsible for making choices, whether they are "good" or "bad." If you realize that a choice you have made is wrong, then it's up to you to decide how to make it right.

Writing Corner

- Gerunds and gerund phrases can act as subjects.
 Deciding what to wear, for example, is usually of very little consequence.
- 2. Gerunds and gerund phrases can act as direct objects of verbs.

 The next time it's cold, you will consider **wearing a jacket**.
- 3. Gerunds can act as objects of prepositions: *before, after, for, of, in, without*, etc. Make a list of the positive and negative aspects before **deciding**.
- B. Write notes in the chart about personal choices you have made and their consequences.

Choices	Consequences

C. Write about choices that you have made and their positive or negative consequences. Who has influenced your choices? What have you learned from the "bad" choices?

مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 202**122**444



12 Form, Meaning and Function

Conditional Sentences: Imaginary Situations

You can use conditional sentences to talk about imaginary or hypothetical situations in the present. Use the simple past in the *if*-clause and *would* in the main clause.

If they built a new highway, the farmers would be affected.

If I was/were rich, I wouldn't have to work.

The contraction of would is 'd: I'd, you'd, he'd, she'd, we'd, they'd.

They'd be happy if they had time to take a vacation.

Wish

Use wish + the simple past for things you want to happen in the present but probably won't.

They don't have much time. They **wish** they **had** more time. I have to study today. I wish I didn't have to study today. Faisal isn't rich. Faisal wishes he was/were rich. I can't speak French. I wish I could speak French.

Note: The form of the verb be is often were for all subjects in imaginary situations and wishes.

- A. Match the sentence parts.
 - 1. ____ If my family had to move to another city,
 - **2.** ____ If everyone cared for the environment,
 - **3.** ____ If he had more work experience,
 - **4.** ____ If people took the bus more often,
 - **5.** ____ If he worked out at the gym every day,
 - **6.** ____ If I could travel anywhere in the world,
- a. there'd be less traffic.
- **b.** he'd be in good shape.
- c. I'd visit New Zealand.
- d. I'd miss my friends.
- e. he'd apply for the job.
- **f.** there'd be less pollution.
- B. Discuss the following situations with a partner. What would you do?
 - 1. You have more free time to do something you really enjoy.
 - 2. You were given a scholarship to study at the college of your choice.
 - 3. You lent a good friend some money, but he/she didn't return it.
 - **4.** You are a conservationist and your job is to protect the environment.
 - 5. Your classmate asked you to not study for an important test.
- **C.** Write two sentences with **wish** for things that each person wants.
 - 1. Trevor has to wake up early for work. He can never get enough sleep.
 - 2. You don't feel well, so you can't hang out with your friends today.
 - 3. There is so much pollution. We want more people to care for the environment.
- ••• 4. You want to buy a new laptop, but you don't have enough money.
- 5. A friend asks Ali to go surfing. He can't go because he doesn't know مراحتاا قران how to surf.

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444





12 Culture Shock



Listen and Discuss 🕢



Which of the following customs are similar in your country?

When in Rome, Do as the Romans Do

When you are visiting a new place, you should try to act as the local people do. Here are some tips.



In Mediterranean Countries A

Eating dinner late is a common custom in Mediterranean countries such as Italy, Greece, and Spain. No one goes out for a meal before 9 P.M., and most restaurants stay open past midnight. It is also common for people in these countries to take an afternoon break. Many stores close for 3 hours in the afternoon, allowing workers to eat with their family, rest, and return to work relaxed.





In England A

In England, it's customary to say "please," "thank you," "excuse me," and "sorry." It's polite to say "excuse me" if someone is blocking your way, and "sorry" if you accidentally bump into someone. And remember to stand in line (or as the British say, "queue up") and wait your turn patiently. It's a good idea to talk about the weather, a favorite topic of conversation with the British.



In Japan ▲

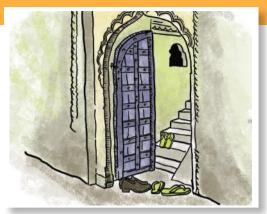
In Japan, be prepared to exchange personal or business cards. When a person gives you a card, don't put it in your pocket right away. The person expects you to read it and even comment on it. It is impolite not to do so.

◀ In Asian Countries

In many Asian countries, people eat with chopsticks. It's not polite to play with chopsticks or to cut and spear food with them. It's rude to leave them standing up in a bowl of rice. When not using your chopsticks, place them on the chopsticks holder. If you can't manage to eat with them, it's advisable to ask for a spoon or a fork.

In Mexico

In Mexico, all university graduates have a title, and they usually expect you to use it. Don't forget to call a university graduate, such as a lawyer or an engineer Licenciado.



◀ In India

Removing shoes before entering a home is customary in India. In fact, it is common practice in many parts of the world. Try not to spread dust and mud in the house and on the carpets of your host.



In the United States and China

In the United States, remember to make sure you tip porters, taxi drivers, and waiters. Waiters expect to get a tip that is 15 percent of the cost of your meal. China is one of those wonderful countries where tipping is not practiced, and almost no one asks for tips.

In Germany

Being punctual is important to Germans. For business meetings it is a good idea to arrive a few minutes early. Hosts also expect their quests to be on time. Being late or rushing makes a bad impression.

Quick Check ✓

- **A. Vocabulary.** Write down four sentences in the article that use expressions of advice and recommendation.
- 📍 It's a good idea to...
- **B.** Comprehension. Answer *true* or *false*.
 - 1. ____ It's not a good idea to discuss the weather in England.
 - 2. ____ You are expected to take off your shoes in an Indian home.
 - **3.** ____ Make sure you call everyone in Mexico Licenciado.
 - __ Be sure to carry business cards with you in Japan.
 - **5.** Remember not to be late for an appointment in Germany.
 - You should always remember to tip in China.

وزارة التعطو Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

2 Pair Work 🔀



- A. Ask and answer about customs in different countries using the information on these pages.
 - What should I remember to do in England?
 - Always remember to stand in line.
 - Is it polite to cut your food with chopsticks in Japan?
 - No, it isn't.
- **B.** Give advice to travelers to different countries.
 - It's advisable to have a snack before dinner in Spain.
 - Why?
 - Because people have dinner very late, and most restaurants stay open after midnight.

12 Culture Shock



3 Grammar **1**



Verb + Infinitive

The infinitive form can follow certain verbs, including the ones below.

afford, choose, decide, expect, forget, hope, learn, manage, offer, promise, refuse, remember, try

We didn't **expect to arrive** so late. expect manage They managed to get an earlier flight. refuse The airline **refused to pay** for our hotel. I didn't **remember to bring** my toothbrush. remember

She **tried to sleep** on the plane, but she couldn't. try

Remember: Some verbs are followed by gerunds. See Unit 10, page 106.

Verb + Noun/Pronoun + Infinitive

In Latin America, families allow children to stay up late.

In China, people don't expect you to tip.

It's... + Infinitive

It's polite to...

not polite to.../impolite to...

rude to...

common to...

wrong to...

advisable to...

a good idea to...

Note: Some of these expressions can be used for advice (for example, It's advisable to..., It's a good idea to...).

Expressions of Advice with Infinitives

Try to...

Try not to...

Remember to...

Don't forget to...

Make sure to...

Be sure to...

Gerunds as Subjects

A gerund can be used as the subject of the sentence.

Traveling is a good way to learn about other cultures.

Tipping is not common in Japan.

Δ	Make sentences	I Isa infinitivas	Add it's	where necessary

- 1. good idea / follow / local customs
- 2. we / managed / get seats / on the crowded bus _____
- 3. not advisable / carry / a lot of money
- 4. make sure / tip / taxi drivers
- 5. try / stay / in places that are safe

مراحتا ق المحالة / stand in line / for a bus

Ministry of Education 2022126444







1. It's advisable _____ in Japan.

2. It's not a good idea ______ in Germany.

3. It's polite ______ in England.

4. It's not common _____ in India.

5. It's important _____ in Mexico.

6. It's common _____ in Mediterranean countries.

C. Look at the photos. What do you think is the polite/not polite thing or the right/wrong thing to do in your country?

It's polite for businessmen to shake hands.
Shaking hands is polite in my country.











D. Complete the sentences with the correct form—the infinitive or gerund. Review the list of verbs that can be followed by gerunds in Unit 10, page 106.

1. We enjoyed _____ (drive) along the scenic route on the way to the ocean.

2. Mahmoud managed _____ (change) the tire in the dark.

3. I refuse _____ (try) different kinds of foods.

4. We kept _____ (look) until we found a good restaurant for dinner.

5. I expected _____ (pay) a lot of money for hotels.

6. I can't stand _____ (wait) in long lines.

7. Please remember _____ (take) your passport with you when you travel.

• 18:1 Fried _____ (learn) some of the customs of the country before I traveled.

مرات التيام Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

12 Culture Shock



4 Language in Context

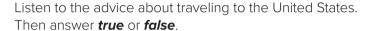
Discuss with a partner how people handle the following situations in your country.

Standing in line to catch a bus is common. OR It isn't common for people to stand in line to catch a bus.

standing in line eating late at night tipping taking a rest in the afternoon shaking hands taking your shoes off in the house

arriving late your idea: ____

Listening



1. _____ Gestures are very similar all over the world.

2. ____ Americans usually introduce themselves with their last names.

3. _____ Americans like to stand really close when they are talking to others.

4. _____ People are expected to arrive on time at all events in the United States.

5. _____ It's polite for house guests to give a small gift in the United States.



Listen. Notice how to is reduced and pronounced quickly. Then practice.

It's polite to shake hands. It's impolite to stare at someone.

It's advisable **to** study the customs. It's common to exchange business cards.

About You



- 1. What dos and don'ts do you know about for different countries? What are some cultural differences you know about?
- 2. Are there different customs in different parts of your country? What are the differences?
- 3. Have you ever lived or traveled abroad? Did you have any difficulty in adjusting?
- 4. Have you ever had a problem because of a cultural difference? Explain.
- 5. What are common gestures in your culture? What do they mean?

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022128444





So, what's it like living and working in China?

Edgar: Well, to be honest, in today's globalized world, there isn't really all that much difference anymore, especially in big cities like Shanghai, where I'm based. There's a lot of traffic, crowded subways and buses, tall skyscrapers, and modern shopping malls just like in other large cities around the world.

Will: Have any differences struck you?

Edgar: Well, the food is very different, and eating with chopsticks was tricky at first, especially rice and noodles. But I got the hang of it.

Will: What about the language?

Edgar: Most of the people I work with speak English well. I'm still learning Chinese to handle everyday situations.

Will: Is there anything else you're not used to yet?

Edgar: No, I've adjusted to the way of life. However, there's still one thing that's kind of weird to me. In China, the family name comes before the first name, and millions of people have the same surname. For example, Wang, Li, Zhang, Chen, and so on are the most common.

Will: No kidding!

Edgar: Yeah, at work when I called out Zhou, three colleagues used to answer me. But I managed to solve the problem.

Will: What did you do?



▲ Shanghai, China

Your Ending

What do you think Edgar answers?

- 1 I found out the first name of each one.
- (2) Together we came up with a Western name for each: John, George, and Joe.
- 3 I left my work station and went and talked to each one.
- **4**) Your idea:

Real Talk

to be honest = used to state something more directly to get the hang of = to get used to doing something the right way

kind of = rather

No kidding! = an expression of surprise and disbelief

About the Conversation

- 1. What things does Edgar say are the same in Shanghai?
- 2. What's his conversational Chinese like?
- 3. What did Edgar find difficult at first?
- 4. What is unusual about Chinese surnames?

وزارة العصلو Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Your Turn

Role-play the conversation like the one above but using a different country. Express surprise at some of the things mentioned.

12 Culture Shock



9 Reading



Before Reading

What problems do you think people have adapting to a different culture?

A FISH OUT OF WATER



Almost everyone who studies, lives, or works abroad experiences some degree of culture shock. This period of cultural adjustment involves everything from getting used to the food and language to smaller things like learning how to use the telephone. No matter how patient and flexible you are, adjusting to a new culture can sometimes be difficult and frustrating. Some people get depressed, and very homesick. But don't panic—these are all totally normal reactions and you are not alone.

The term culture shock was first used by writer Kalervo Oberg in 1954. He found that all human beings experience the same feelings when they travel to or live in a different country or culture. Oberg identified five distinct stages of culture shock.

1. THE ADJUSTMENT PHASE

This period can last six months or longer. The newcomer is excited about being in a new place and experiencing a new lifestyle. Some problems may occur, but the person usually tends to accept them as part of the adjustment to another country and novelty of being in a new place. People are generally helpful to the newcomer, and that person feels welcome.

2. EMPTINESS OR REJECTION PHASE

The newcomer has to deal with the usual problems of accommodation, transportation, shopping (not finding your favorite foods), and very often not being able to communicate fluently in the local language. The local people may not understand why the newcomer is making such a big deal over what they see as a small problem. At this point, the newcomer starts to complain about, and maybe even reject, the new country.

3. THE CONFORMIST PHASE

Gaining some understanding of the new culture, its ideals, and its values brings a new feeling of pleasure. The crisis is over when the newcomer learns to understand the cultural differences, but hasn't completely adjusted to the new culture.

4. ASSIMILATION PHASE OR COMPLETE ADJUSTMENT

In this phase, the person accepts the food, the habits, and customs of the new country, and may even find some things better than things back home. The newcomer becomes completely adjusted and feels comfortable in the new place. On returning home, the traveler will miss the new friends and the country and will cherish the memories forever.

5. REVERSE CULTURE SHOCK

This is when the person comes back to the home country. The returnee may have been away from home for a long 👥 time and gots a "re-entry shock." Many things may have changed, and it will take a while to get used to home again.

وزارة التعليم Ministry of Education 202230444





After Reading

- A. Match the words with the definitions.
 - **1.** _____ flexible
 - **2.** _____ frustrating
 - 3. ____ homesick
 - **4.** _____ stage
 - **5.** ____ newcomer
 - **6.** ____ novelty
 - **7.** ____ values
 - **8.** _____ to cherish

- a. missing home and family
- **b.** able to change in different situations
- **c.** beliefs about what is right or wrong
- **d.** person who has arrived recently
- e. annoying because you cannot do something you want
- f. one level or phase in a series
- g. to remember a pleasant feeling for a long time
- h. something new and interesting
- B. Answer about the reading.
 - 1. What do you think "fish out of water" means?
 - 2. What do you understand by the term "culture shock"?
 - 3. When did the expression first appear?
 - **4.** In your own words, classify the five different stages of culture shock.

Discussion

- 1. Have you ever lived for a period of time in another country? What was your experience like? Did you get culture shock? Reverse culture shock?
- 2. What experiences of culture shock have people that you know had when they visited another country?

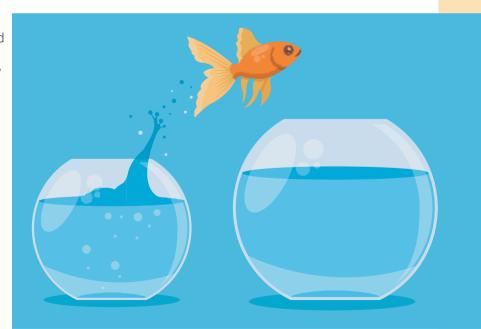
10 Project



Work in groups. Think of advice to give to travelers to your country. Make a list of tips to help them fit

into the local culture.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444









12 Culture Shock



11 Writing 🚺



A. In groups, read the quotes about culture and travel. Discuss what the quotes mean.

A people without the knowledge of their past history, origin, and culture is like a tree without roots.

-Marcus Garvey

Though we travel the world over to find the beautiful, we must carry it with us or we find it not.

> -Ralph Waldo Emerson

When you travel, remember that a foreign country is not designed to make you comfortable. It is designed to make its own people comfortable. -Clifton Fadiman

Culture makes people understand each other better. And if they understand each other better in their soul, it is easier to overcome the economic and political barriers. But first they have to understand that their neighbor is, in the end, just like them, with the same problems, the same questions.

-Paulo Coelho

We shall not cease from exploration, and the end of all our exploring will be to arrive where we started and know the place for the first time.

—T.S. Eliot

Writing Corner

- 1. Be used to + gerund/noun means to be familiar with something usual. I am not used to eating with chopsticks.
- 2. Get used to + gerund/noun means to become familiar with something. I am getting used to some of the local customs.
- 3. Used to + infinitive refers to an action that repeatedly happened in the past, but does not happen now. The negative form is didn't use to.

We used to walk to school. We didn't use to take the bus.

В.	Со	mplete the sentences with the gerund	or infinitive of the word in parentheses	i.
	1.	The people here are used to	(stand) in line at the l	bus stop.
	2.	It isn't easy to get used to	(live) in a new cultural e	nvironment.
	3.	We are not used to the weather	(be) so cold and r	ainy.
	4.	She used to	_ (drink) coffee in the morning, but now	she drinks tea.
	5.	He has gotten used to	(drive) on the left side of the	e road.
	6.	You may find it strange at first, but you	'll get used to	(eat) the food.
	7 .	I had difficulty with the language at firs	st, but I'm used to	(speak) it now
	8.	I didn't use to	(take) a nap, but now I rest for an ho	ur every afternoon.
_	l no c	vaine that you are stoying in a foreign o	country Write an email to a friend about	t the eviltured

differences you have experienced. Before you write, you may want to research the local habits, customs, gestures, cuisine, weather, etc.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 202232444



12 Form, Meaning and Function

Past Perfect

Use the past perfect tense (had + past participle*) to indicate an action that happened before another action in the past. Some time expressions that are used with the past perfect are: after, already, before, by the time, ever, never, until.

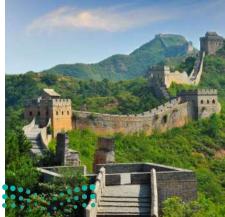
By the time we got to the airport, our flight had already left. After she had gone to the hotel, Amal exchanged some money. Had you ever eaten sushi before you traveled to Japan? No, I'd never tasted sushi until I visited Japan. He'd had the car for ten years before he sold it.

Note: The contraction of had is 'd: I'd, you'd, he'd, she'd, we'd, they'd.

* See page 162 for a list of the past participles of irregular verbs.



A.	Сс	mplete the sent	ences with the verbs in parentheses	s. Use the simple	past and the past p	erfect.
	1.	They	(already start) boarding the pl	ane when I	(arrive) a	t the gate.
	2.	Sabaha Chinese resta	(not know) how to use the clurant before.	hopsticks becaus	e she	(never eat) ii
	3.	Wereservation in a	(not manage) get a hotel room dvance.	because we	(not ma	ke) a
	4.	I	_ (never be) abroad until l	(travel) to F	Paris last summer.	
	5.		(you / learn) to speak French before	e you	(go) to Paris?	
	6.	The waiter	(be) upset because his o	customers	(not leave	e) him a tip.
	7.	By the time Fari	s (finish) his studies, l	ne	(live) in London for	five years.
	8.	After he London.	(adjust) to British culture, F	aris	(feel) quite comf	ortable living in
	9.		(become) so familiar with the Br shock when he returned home.	itish customs that	: he	_ (experience)
•	10.	Everyone	(take off) their shoes befo	ore they	(enter) the r	nosque.
В.	Сс	mplete the text	with the correct past tense of the ve	rbs in parenthese	es.	
		Marine Co.	I(1. al	ways want) to visi	t China, and last ye	ar my dream



I (1. always want) to visit China, and last year my dream
(2. come) true. Before I(3. leave) home,
I(4. plan) my trip carefully.
I(5. got) maps and lots of expert advice from my
travel agent. I (6. study) the Chinese customs, and I
(7. even take) a course to learn some basic Chinese.
I(8. spend) one month in China traveling to different
regions of the country. I (9. see) amazing sights like
the Great Wall, which(10. be) more spectacular than I
(11. ever imagine). The scenery was so incredible that
(12. take) over 300 pictures in one day!

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 133 13/4/22 6:47 PM

EXPANSION Units 9–12

1 Language Review



A.	Complete	the	sentences	about y	ourself/	using a	verb	in the	gerund	form.
----	----------	-----	-----------	---------	----------	---------	------	--------	--------	-------

	1. I can't stand
	2. I really enjoy
	3. I gave up
	4. I really miss
	5. I avoid
	6. I hate
	7. I don't mind
	8. I suggest
В.	Write three sentences about the things you've <i>already done</i> and <i>haven't done yet</i> this year.
	1.
	2
	3
	4

C. Complete the sentences with the past progressive or the simple past tense.

The other day I ______(1. be) on my way to school on my scooter. As I ______(2. drive) along, I noticed that the car in front of me ______(3. go) slowly, and it ______(4. move) from side to side. I realized that the driver ______(5. talk) on his cell phone. He _____(**6.** have) an argument. He ______(7. make) gestures with his hand while he (8. drive), and I could see it coming! Suddenly he lost control of the car and _____ (9. crash) into a tree on the side of the road. I stopped and _____ (**10.** rush) to help him. Fortunately, he wasn't hurt, because he ______ (11. wear) his seat belt. وزارة التعطيم



SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 134



SUCCESS

D. Complete the questionnaire about yourself. Fill in the top. Check the items that are true for you on the bottom.

SUCCESS

CAREER PATHWAYS CAREER PLANNING SERVICES

Thousands of students have used our services to make successful career choices.

So why not fill in this questionnaire? We will send you, at no obligation, a complete guide to our services, together with details of aptitude tests that will help you choose a career that is right for you.

ne	
ldress	
ccupation of interest	Male Female Age_
YOUR PERSONALITY	YOUR INTERESTS
talkative	sports
shy	technology
outgoing	environment
creative	economics
calm	languages
nervous	geography
ambitious	science/math
persuasive	reading/literature
hardworking	history/archaeology
reliable	art/design
efficient	psychology
Other:	Other:

- **E.** Work with a partner. Make guesses about his/her personality and interests, and ask for confirmation. Use the list in the guestionnaire in exercise **D**.
 - A: You're ambitious, aren't you?
 - B: Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.
- **A:** You like sports, don't you?
- **B:** Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

<mark>Pul حتاا قرازم</mark> Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

EXPANSION Units 9–12

Tlike people who have a good sense of	humor. / I don't like people	who aren't reliable.
l		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
Adnan wants to be a successful doctor. \	Write five things he'll have to	do to achieve that.
Start the sentences with if .		
If Adnan wants to be a doctor, he'll ha		
If he wants to get into medical school,	0 0 0	
1. If he's accepted, he'll		
2		
2.		
2.		
2.		
2		
2. 3.		
2. 3. 4. 5.		
2. 3. 4.		
2 3 4 5 Complete the sentences about yourself.	Use <i>will</i> or <i>might</i> .	
2 3 4 5 Complete the sentences about yourself. 1. If I don't do my chores,	Use <i>will</i> or <i>might</i> .	
2	Use <i>will</i> or <i>might</i> .	
 2	Use <i>will</i> or <i>might</i> .	
 2	Use <i>will</i> or <i>might</i> .	



مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 202**436**444

- **I.** Complete the sentences using a gerund or an infinitive.
 - 1. I hope _____ a good grade on my English test.
 - **2.** The thief avoided _____ the police officer straight in the eye.
 - **3.** The students expect _____ their assignments before Friday.
 - **4.** I didn't have any money, so my friend offered _____ for my meal.
 - **5.** It's important _____ all necessary vaccinations before you travel.
 - **6.** Our neighbors promised _____ our plants when we're away.
 - 7. I hate _____ the pots and pans after I finish cooking.
 - **8.** My co-workers refuse _____ on weekends.
 - **9.** I miss _____ when I'm away from home.
 - **10.** We stopped ______ tennis in the winter because of the weather.
- J. Complete the sentences about what is or isn't allowed or advisable.
- Talking on a cell phone while driving is not allowed.
 - 1. _____ in the street is subject to a fine.
 - **2.** ______ in the library disturbs others.
 - **3.** _____ regularly keeps you healthy.
 - **4.** ______ is good for your health.











137



مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

EXPANSION Units 9–12

2 Reading



Before Reading

What do you know about aptitude tests and IQ tests? Have you ever taken one?

APTITUDE AND IQ: WHAT'S THE DIFFERENCE?

IQ=138 You're a GENIUS RESULTE E=mc' E=mc' E=mc' E=mc' E=mc' E=mc' E=mc' E=mc' E=mc'

Aptitude Tests

Nowadays, millions of people—young and old—use aptitude tests to help them decide on a career path or a career change. Many employers also find them useful in their selection of new employees. Aptitude tests can be particularly beneficial for high school students who are uncertain about what career path they should follow.

Very few adolescents have a clear idea of what they want to do when they grow up. They often don't know where to begin searching for a job, let alone realize the vast number of career options that are available. Career

aptitude tests can help steer students in the right direction by assessing their natural abilities.

What is aptitude? First, aptitude should not be confused with academic knowledge, skills, personal interests, or intelligence. Aptitudes are natural talents—special abilities for learning to do certain tasks quickly and easily. Skills and knowledge are learned, but aptitude is something you are born with. For example, an accountant who has learned the skills for the job, but has an aptitude for something else will probably find his work unrewarding and difficult. On the other hand, someone who knows nothing about accounting may have the aptitude to learn the necessary skills quickly and easily.

A career aptitude test determines someone's strengths, weaknesses, and natural ability to perform and succeed in certain professions. Common areas of testing are: logical reasoning, mathematical ability, mechanical understanding, spatial awareness, and communication. The results are best when combined with interest and personality tests to assess what types of work a person would most likely enjoy and perform well.

IQ Tests

(

IQ stands for Intelligence Quotient. The typical IQ test produces a score that compares the test taker's cognitive ability to the general population. A score between 90 and 110 is average, and a score over 130 shows exceptional intelligence—a genius. So what exactly does an IQ test measure? More simply, it assesses the ability to understand concepts and solve different types of problems using logic. This includes spatial ability, mathematical reasoning, language ability, and memory. A sample math question might be: "Ben bought three books for \$5 each with a 20% discount. How much did he pay?"

IQ tests, however, are not particularly useful in career planning. Two people with the same IQ may have very different aptitudes. Occupations of famous people with high IQs include authors, journalists, businessmen, scientists, inventors, computer specialists, lawyers, cartoonists, actors, boxing champions, and race car drivers.

مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 202**138**444

After Reading

A. Complete with the correct word.

1.	Something that is helpful	or	good for you	ı is		<u>.</u> .	
	a. unrewarding	b.	certain	C	beneficial		
2.	. When you		someth	ing, you	measure its valu	ue, importanc	e, or size.
	a. realize	b.	assess	C.	perform		
3.	. When you put two or mo	ore	things togetl	ner, you		them.	
	a. combine	b.	confuse	C.	select		
4.	. The level that is typical o	or n	ormal is		·		
	a. exceptional	b.	average	C.	vast		
5.	. When you think two thin with another.	gs	are connecte	ed by m	stake, you		_ one thing
	a. assess	b.	succeed	C.	confuse		
6.	. When you understand th	ne ç	general idea,	you un	derstand the		·
	a. option	b.	concept	C.	ability		
Α	nswer true or false.						
1.	Millions of people	use	e aptitude tes	sts to ge	et a job.		
2.	Some people use	apt	titude tests to	hire ne	ew employees.		
3.	Most high school s	stuc	dents know v	hat job	they want to do.		
4.	Aptitude is someo	ne'	s natural abil	ity to pe	rform certain tas	sks well.	
5.	A genius is a perso	on v	with an IQ of	more th	ian 130.		

Discussion

B.

1. What do you think you have an aptitude for?

6. People with the same IQ have similar talents.

- 2. What kind of career are you interested in?
- **3.** Do you think your career choice matches your aptitude and personality?
- **4.** Do you know someone who finds their job rewarding or unrewarding? Do you think it is related to their aptitude?
- **5.** What factors might influence someone's IQ?
- **6.** Do you think IQ tests are always accurate?

3 Writing 🗾

Write about an occupation you are interested in and whether you think your aptitude and personality will make you successful at it.

<u> جيل حتاا قرازم</u> Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



EXPANSION Units 9–12

4 Chant Along 🔀



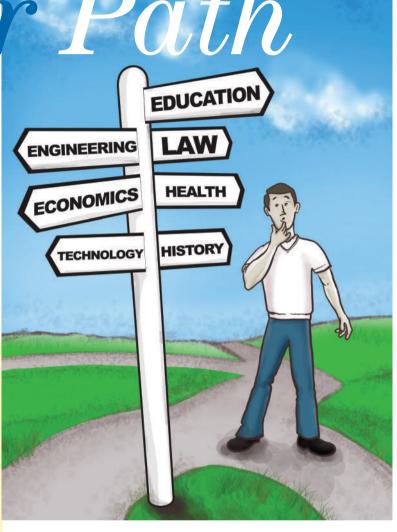
You should choose a career
That you'll find rewarding,
A satisfying line of work
That you'll never find boring.
If you attend university,
You'll obtain a degree.
You'll have qualifications
To earn a high salary.
Now let's look at your interests,
Let's test your IQ.
What are you adept at?
What occupation is right for you?

CHORUS

What is the right job for me?
I just don't know what I should be.
I am still in high school,
I'm only sixteen and a half.
How can I choose a lifelong career?
Do I have to decide by next year?
Please give me some guidance.
Help me choose the right path.



Ministry of Education 202240444



Well, you could be a carpenter
Who designs chairs and tables.
How about an electrician
Who repairs overhead cables?
A race car driver—
Now that's really exciting!
Be an author or a journalist
Who is gifted at writing.
Choose a profession or a vocation:
Pilot, baker, lawyer, dentist,
Teacher, plumber, chef, accountant,
Artist, engineer, scientist...

CHORUS



Δ	Match	tho	words	with t	tha	meanings
A.	Match	แษ	WOIUS	VVILIII	แษ	meanings

- **1.** ___ rewarding a. advice
- **2.** to obtain
- **b.** regular payment for work
- **3.** ___ qualifications **c.** satisfying

- **5.** ____ to be adept at **e.** to get something with effort
- **6.** ____ guidance
- f. to be good at
- **B.** Find 5 words or expressions in the chant that mean a type of job.

1.	4	l
2.	5	5
_		

Comprehension

- A. Answer true or false.
 - **1.** _____ The boy knows what career he will follow.
 - **2.** ____ The boy is asking for advice.
 - **3.** _____ The boy has already graduated from high school.
 - **4.** _____ The career advisor suggests a variety of occupations.
 - **5.** ____ The career advisor tells the boy which occupation is best.
- B. Complete three sentences about the occupations.
 - **1.** A carpenter is someone who
 - 2. An electrician is someone who _____
 - 3. A journalist is someone who _____

Discussion

- **1.** Have you decided on a career?
- 2. What qualifications do you need for your chosen career?
- 3. Who do you ask for career advice?
- 4. Do you think aptitude tests are helpful in planning a career? Why or why not?

5 Project 🍱



Research some common questions on aptitude and IQ tests, and present them to the class.









EXPANSION Units 9-12

6 Reading



Before Reading

Taking a nap is recommended for both religious and health reasons. Do you take a nap in the afternoon? Do you feel sleepy after a large meal?

TAKING A SIESTA

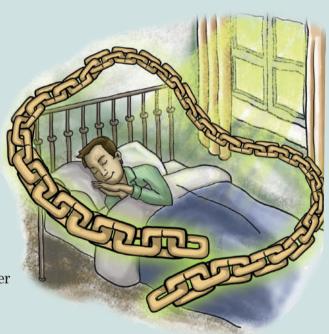
"Sleep is the golden chain that ties health and our bodies together." Thomas Dekker

"A good laugh and a long sleep are the best cures in the doctor's book." Irish Proverb

"A well spent day brings happy sleep." Leonardo da Vinci

The idea of taking a siesta—an afternoon nap—and closing business for a few hours during the day is frowned upon by most Americans and Northern Europeans. In their cultures where "time is money," a sleep break is considered wasteful and unproductive. However, in many Latin, Asian, and Mediterranean cultures, taking a nap and an afternoon break is part of the daily routine.

Since the daytime nap is a custom in Spain, the Spanish word *siesta* is used to refer to a short rest after the midday meal. Many believe that the original concept of siesta was created to allow people to spend time with their family and friends. Today, it is a common practice in many countries where the weather is warm. The high temperatures, especially in summer, combined with a large meal contribute to a feeling of sleepiness. Still, some colder regions of Latin America practice siesta. In these cases, the tradition seems to be based on cultural influence rather than climate.



HERE ARE SOME BENEFITS OF SIESTA:

BIOLOGICAL NEED: Some doctors believe that the body is designed to sleep for shorter periods of time rather than in one large dose. Also, the body's blood sugar levels drop after a big meal, inducing drowsiness. This explains why many people may feel sleepy after lunch.

PROTECTION FROM THE SUN: Siesta takes place when the sun is at its highest point. This is when the temperature is hottest and the sun's rays are strongest. Avoiding the sun during midday protects people against sunburn, sunstroke, skin cancer, and heat exhaustion.

HEALTH: Studies have shown that people who nap regularly during the week are 37% less likely to suffer from heart disease. Napping helps people relax and reduces their stress levels.

IMPROVED MEMORY: Other research has found that people who took a short nap were able to remember information they learned better than those who did not nap.

Ministry of Edu

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 142 13/4/22 6:47 PM



After Reading

- A. Match the words from the text with the definitions
 - **1.** _____ to frown upon
- a. sleepiness
- 2. ____ to contribute to b. to cause an effect
- **3.** _____ to induce
- c. to play a part in causing
- **4.** ____ drowsiness
- d. to disapprove of
- **5.** _____ exhaustion
- e. to decrease the amount
- **6.** _____ to reduce
- f. a loss of energy
- B. In your own words, describe the 4 benefits of taking a siesta.
- C. Answer the questions. Discuss with a partner.
 - 1. What does the expression "time is money" mean?
 - 2. Which of the quotes about sleep do you like best? Why?

Discussion

- **1.** What are the advantages of taking a siesta?
- 2. What are the disadvantages of taking a siesta?
- **3.** Which countries do you know of that practice siesta? Do they practice it in the same way?
- 4. Do you think that a siesta is beneficial, or do you think it is wasteful and unproductive? Explain.



Project 🎎



Research the benefits of sleep and present your findings to the class.



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

EXPANSION Units 9-12

8 Chant Along 蒫



ssimilatin

Welcome to our country! We're glad to have you here, But please respect our rules And the customs we hold dear. Our habits may seem different. Our cuisine may taste strange. So, if you want to settle in You'll need to make some change.

Assimilating is the key To co-exist in harmony.

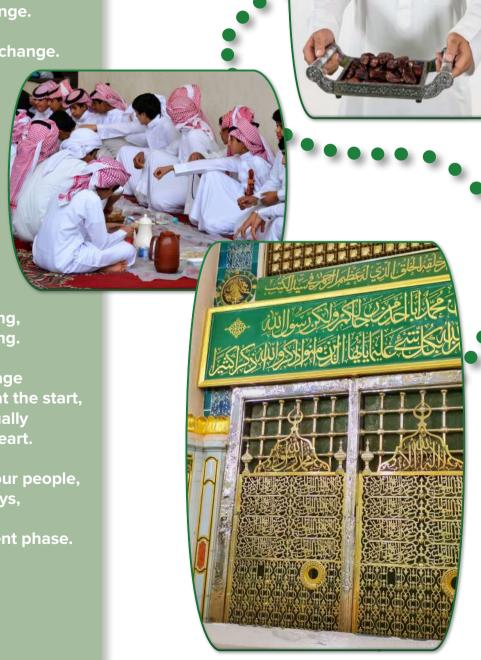
Chorus

We have our differences You and I. But it's all right If we don't see eye to eye. There's no reason why, No, there's no reason why, We can't get along. If we respect one another, Our friendship will be strong, Our friendship will be strong.

Learning our native language May seem overwhelming at the start, But you'll pick it up eventually So be patient, don't lose heart.

You'll grow to appreciate our people, Get accustomed to our ways, And cherish our traditions. It's all part of the adjustment phase. Assimilating is the key To fit into society.







A. Match the following expressions with their meanings.

1.	to	hold	dear
	ιO	HOIG	ucai

2. to settle in

3. _____ to see eye to eye **c.** to feel at home

4. ____ to get along

5. ____ to lose heart

6. _____ to pick up

7. _____ to get accustomed to g. to learn

a. to agree

b. to get discouraged

d. to cherish

e. to have a good relationship

f. to get used to

B. Make sentences with the following verbs.

1.	o respect
2.	o appreciate

3. to cherish _____

Comprehension

Answer true or false.

- **1.** _____ The person greets the newcomer with pleasure.
- **2.** ____ The person advises the newcomer not to change.
- **3.** ____ He says that it's OK if they don't agree.
- **4.** _____ He recommends they have mutual respect for one another.
- **5.** _____ He says that learning the language may be difficult.
- **6.** After some time, the newcomer will get used to the lifestyle.

7. He says the newcomer will never fit in.

Discussion

1. Do you agree with the advice in the chant?

2. What difficulties do people face when they move to another country?

3. What should a newcomer do to assimilate into a new society?

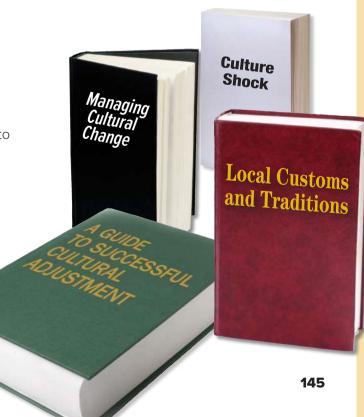
4. What should the local people do to make a newcomer feel welcome?





Write advice on what a newcomer needs to do to fit into a new society and how the local people can help.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



13/4/22 6:47 PM

Vocabulary

Lifestyles

VOCABULARY

Nouns

addict fanatic fitness herbal tea lifestyle puzzle thumb vegetarian

Verbs

download eniov hate overdo solve work out

Phrases with verbs

access the Internet chat online get a haircut spend money/time

Adverbs/Expressions of frequency

all the time alwavs every day/week frequently from time to time generally hardly ever never normally now and then

occasionally often once/twice a day once/twice a week once in a while rarely regularly seldom sometimes

usually

Adjectives

challenging physical proud

Question words

How long? How much? How often?

Preposition except

EXPRESSIONS

Real Talk

Anyway

You see

exercise freak

turn (someone) off

Life Stories

VOCABULARY

Nouns

appointment attitude blood colleague community donation effort employee facility

infant leadership league litter newborn operation owner principal

Verbs

award compete donate encourage gather join practice receive

Phrases with verbs

comb the beach get in touch with grow up take responsibility used to

Adjectives

environmental crippling hopeful original outstanding

EXPRESSIONS

Wishing someone well

congratulations wish (someone) all the best

Real Talk

twin

big break to be into something to turn up What about . . . ?

Ministry of Education 2022 146444

وزارة التعطيم



VOCABULARY

Nouns

accent flight gate baggage liquid belongings

boarding pass photo identification carry-on safety

climate stranger container suitcase departure tag difficulty vaccination

visa

exchange student

Verbs

board check ensure identify leave miss pack proceed remove

Phrases with verbs

fly back make a mistake take off (your shoes)

Adjectives

delayed major necessary required

Adverb

nowadays

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

compared to for a while in case of

Expression to reassure

Don't worry. I'll be all right.

Requesting and agreeing

May I (see your ticket), please? Sure.

Saying someone doesn't have to do something

That won't be necessary.

Real Talk

kind of pretty pick up

What Do I Need to Buy?

VOCABULARY

Nouns

margarine appetizer cucumber salmon avocado dairy product meat salt bean dates milk sausage beef egg mushroom seafood bread flour olive oil shrimp butter fruit onion squid garlic strawberry carrot papaya grain sugar cereal parsley vegetable cheese grape pepper ingredient watermelon chicken pineapple condiment lamb potato yogurt corn oil lettuce recipe crab mango rice

Partitives

cup of kilo of package of tablespoon of teaspoon of

Verbs

add bake boil cover fry grill

mix roast spread steam

Sequence words

after that finally first then

Pronouns

anything nothing something

Expressions of quantity

a dozen a few a little

enough many much

a lot of

EXPRESSIONS

Making offers

Do you need any help? Would you like some more?

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Real Talk

Everything's under control. I can't wait. I've had more than enough. you guys

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 147 13/4/22 6:47 PM

Vocabulary

EXPANSION Units 1-4

VOCABULARY

Nouns

bee ice cap
branch lake
cage parrot
crops planet
faucet ranch
forest stream
glacier trunk

Verbs

cool off flow install irrigate manufacture preserve provide recycle store

Adjectives

accessible alarming aquatic essential indispensable locked up steamy usable

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

be the case do our share take for granted

5 Since When?

VOCABULARY

Nouns

accounting
brick
consumer
device
feature
image
invention
microwave oven

model printer printing press

recharge resolution

Verbs

appear capture invent offer produce take up take over

Adjectives

available light
clumsy mass
conventional movable
digital portable
entire professional
high-tech successful
household widespread
huge

Prepositions

for since

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

be around by accident hit the market

Real Talk

Congratulations! . . . er Long time no see settle down

What have you been up to?

Pul حتاا قرازم Ministry of Education 202**448**444







Do You Know Where It Is?

VOCABULARY

Nouns

bridge bullet train commuter fare suburb survey vehicle

Features of a town/community

clean air
cost of living
crime rate
green area
housing
public transportation system
quality of life
recreation

Nouns— Measurement words

kilometer mile

Verbs

commute cycle move out park renovate

Adjectives

cozy
efficient
low
narrow
overall
polluted
punctual

Adverbs

approximately roughly

EXPRESSIONS

Real Talk

a bit
Definitely!
run down
The only thing is that . . .
you can't have it all

7 It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?

VOCABULARY

Nouns

antique hammer pliers broom hose rocking chair knife, knives (pl.) cup saucer fan ladder saw fork lamp screwdriver frying pan lawn mower spoon garage sale luggage teapot garbage can plate teddy bear vacuum cleaner grass pot

Verbs

guess run on

Verb phrase

be able to

EXPRESSIONS

Idiom

from around here

Disagreeing politely

I don't think so.

Real Talk

How do you do? I'll be happy to . . . Is that so? show someone around

مرارة التعليم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Vocabulary

8 Drive Slowly!

VOCABULARY

Nouns

automatic transmission brake pedal bumper dashboard exterior gas pedal gas tank glove compartment headlight highway hood ignition interior pedestrian rearview mirror

road sign

seat belt

signal light speed limit steering wheel ticket trunk windshield windshield wipers

Verbs

obey pass speed watch out

Adverbs

carefully slowly well

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

GPS

in a hurry run into traffic

Real Talk

Hey I'm doing 60.

You can't be serious!

EXPANSION Units 5-8

VOCABULARY

Nouns

accomplishment rapids
breeze scent
cable car skydiving
landscape trail
objective treat
parachute valley
pass white-water rafting

peak

Verbs

accompany conquer float paddle pedal rush wonder

Adjectives

calm rural proud scenic frightened glacial long-distance rural proud scenic tiring unique

Adverbs

constantly terribly

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

be in contact with get used to look forward to worth the effort





VOCABULARY

Nouns

airline fake attraction flyers editor pedal cab event thief

Verbs

compliment grab recognize spill steal

Adjectives

absentminded athletic clever efficient generous hardworking

honest kind lazy optimistic patient persuasive

pessimistic polite quiet reliable rude

selfish

serious silly talkative typical unreliable

151

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

give directions hail a taxi hand out in a hurry on duty

Real Talk

a real treat I mean Of course

働

10 Who Used My Toothpaste?

VOCABULARY

Nouns

complaint dishwashing liquid hairbrush hair dryer mess mirror nail polish nephew scissors shampoo toothpaste

Verbs

annoy avoid borrow feed finish imagine irritate mind splash stand suggest

Two-word verbs

blow up clean up give back give up mess up put away put back take over turn down turn off

Adjective

dirty

Adverbs

already just yet

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

make oneself at home wait in line

Real Talk

At long last! That's a bit too much.

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Vocabulary

11 Making Choices

VOCABULARY

Nouns

airshow pollution benefit preference choice resort conservationist route environment scholarship farmer subject graduation

Verbs

care interfere
fail involve
fit in pass (a test)
generate speed
graduate study

Adjective

scenic

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

be against feel like (doing) fit in get a chance get caught would rather

Real Talk

It seems to me make up your mind up in the air

12 Culture Shock

VOCABULARY

Nouns

break lawyer chopsticks mud custom pocket dust porter graduate shock guest surname host tip impression topic

Verbs

adjust manage
allow remove
block rest
bump (into) rush
comment spear
exchange spread
expect tip
handle

Adjectives

crowded customary globalized local punctual relaxed similar tricky

Adverbs

accidentally patiently

EXPRESSIONS

Expressions with It's + infinitive

It's advisable to ...
It's a good idea to ...
It's common to ...
It's not polite to .../It's impolite to ...
It's polite to ...
It's rude to ...

ارت التحليم wrong to . . . Ministry of Education

Ministry of Education 2023**52**444

Expressions of advice

Be sure to ...
Don't forget to ...
Make sure to ...
Remember to ...
Try not to ...
Try to ...

Idioms

be based be on time stand in line wait your turn What's it like . . . ?

Real Talk

kind of No kidding! to be honest to get the hang of

EXPANSION Units 9–12

VOCABULARY

Nouns

adolescent nap occupation aptitude cable option career profession concept qualification salary cure degree siesta dose skin cancer drowsiness sleepiness exhaustion strength genius stress sunburn guidance harmony sunstroke intelligence talent IQ vocation logic weakness memory

Verbs

appreciate contribute
assess induce
assimilate obtain
cherish reduce
combine (with) respect
confuse (with) succeed

Adverbs

particularly simply

Adjectives

average rewarding
beneficial sleepy
cognitive uncertain
exceptional unproductive
gifted unrewarding
overwhelming wasteful

EXPRESSIONS

Idioms

be adept at let alone frown upon line of work get accustomed to get along grow up see eye to eye hold dear let alone line of work line of work grow up see eye to eye settle in







Writing Checklists

1 A report on the habits of young people

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan paragraphs				
take notes on the topic				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
write an introductory paragraph				
make clear and interesting statements				
give interesting examples				
use appropriate vocabulary				
write a closing paragraph				
use pronouns to link sentences				
edit and correct my mistakes				

2 A personal biography

I can	Great!	Good!	ok!	Needs work
organize and plan paragraphs				
mark the events in my life on a timeline				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
introduce myself in the opening paragraph				
order events chronologically				
give interesting examples				
use appropriate vocabulary				
write a closing paragraph				
use appropriate language/style				
edit and correct my mistakes				

مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 2022**154**444

3 An email to a friend

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan an email				
prepare notes for paragraphs				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
write an appropriate greeting				
express my feelings				
use interesting vocabulary				
describe activities and places effectively				
write an appropriate closing				
use appropriate informal language/style				
edit and correct my mistakes				

4 A recipe

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
collect information about a recipe				
take notes and use them to write				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
express quantities correctly				
use sequence words				
use the imperative to give directions				
use appropriate vocabulary				
use appropriate language/style				
edit and correct my mistakes				



Writing Checklists

EXPANSION Units 1-4 A report about an endangered species

I can	Great!	Good!	OK!	Needs work
organize and plan a report				
research and take notes on the topic				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
write an introductory paragraph				
organize and order facts				
include interesting details				
use a range of vocabulary				
write a closing paragraph				
use appropriate language/style				
edit and correct my mistakes				

A description of personal possessions

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan paragraphs				
prepare notes on the topic				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
write an introductory paragraph				
describe objects effectively				
express my feelings				
use a range of vocabulary				
write a closing paragraph				
use pronouns for better cohesion				
edit and correct my mistakes				

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 202**2156**444

6 An essay about my town

I can	Great!	Good!	OK!	Needs work
organize and plan paragraphs				
research and take notes on the topic				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
write an introductory paragraph				
compare and contrast details well				
develop paragraphs in the main body				
write topic sentences for paragraphs				
use a range of vocabulary				
write an appropriate conclusion				
edit and correct my mistakes				

7 A narrative about a strange coincidence

I can	Great!	Good!	OK!	Needs work
prepare an outline in an event chain diagram				
take notes on the places, people, and events				
set the scene in the introduction				
develop events clearly				
describe feelings				
use descriptive vocabulary				
use time words to sequence events				
end the story with an interesting conclusion				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use past tenses correctly				
edit and correct my mistakes				

مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Writing Checklists

8 An essay about raising the driving age

I can	Great!	Good!	OK!	Needs work
organize ideas in a chart				
take notes on the reasons and results				
write an introduction				
develop ideas clearly				
use a range of vocabulary				
use phrases to express cause or reason				
use phrases to express result				
write a conclusion				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
edit and correct my mistakes				

EXPANSION Units 5-8 A brochure for an adventure trip

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan information				
research and take notes on the topic				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
interest the reader				
give descriptive details				
use interesting vocabulary				
convince the reader				
use appropriate language/style				
edit and correct my mistakes				



9 An interview with a humanitarian

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan an interview				
prepare notes/questions				
use question forms correctly				
use information given to write responses				
order questions in a logical sequence				
use a range of vocabulary				
end the interview on a positive note				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use appropriate formal/polite language				
use tenses correctly				
edit and correct my mistakes				

10 Internet forum entries on impolite behavior and its effects

I can	Great!	Good!	OK!	Needs work
organize and plan my forum entries				
take notes on rude behavior and its effects				
describe impolite behavior				
explain the effects of rude behavior				
express my ideas clearly				
use a range of vocabulary/expressions				
use relative clauses to link ideas				
use relative pronouns correctly				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
edit and correct my mistakes				

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 159

Writing Checklists

11 A description of personal choices and their consequences

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan paragraphs				
take notes on choices and consequences				
write an introduction				
describe choices I have made and their positive or negative consequences				
describe who has influenced my choices				
use a range of vocabulary				
use gerunds and gerund phrases				
express what I have learned in the conclusion				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
edit and correct my mistakes				

12 An email about cultural differences

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan paragraphs				
research and take notes on the topic				
write a greeting for the email				
describe habits/traditions in detail				
express feelings and reactions				
use a range of vocabulary				
use expressions with <i>used to</i>				
write a closing for the email				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
edit and correct my mistakes				

مرارت التكليم Ministry of Education 202**460**444

EXPANSION Units 9—12 A description of an occupation

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan paragraphs				
take notes on an occupation				
take notes on my aptitude/personality				
write an introduction				
describe the occupation in detail				
use a range of vocabulary				
describe my aptitude and relate it to the occupation				
assess my suitability for the occupation in the conclusion				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
edit and correct my mistakes				

EXPANSION Units 9–12

An essay giving advice on fitting in

I can	Great!	Good!	ок!	Needs work
organize and plan paragraphs				
research and take notes on cultural assimilation				
state the topic/problem in the introduction				
give helpful advice				
explain why the advice is beneficial				
use linking expressions				
use a range of vocabulary				
state the results of your advice in the conclusion				
use punctuation and capitals correctly				
use tenses correctly				
்பின் ர் ரோd correct my mistakes				

Ministry of Education

Irregular Verbs

Base Forr	n	Simple Past	Past Participle
be		was / were	been
become		became	become
blow		blew	blown
buy		bought	bought
come		came	come
cut		cut	cut
do		did	done
drink		drank	drunk
drive		drove	driven
eat		ate	eaten
fall		fell	fallen
feed		fed	fed
fight		fought	fought
find		found	found
fly		flew	flown
get		got	gotten
give		gave	given
go		went	gone
hang		hung	hung
have		had	had
hear		heard	heard
hold		held	held
hurt		hurt	hurt
know		knew	known
leave		left	left
lend		lent	lent
lose		lost	lost
make		made	made
mean		meant	meant
meet		met	met
pay		paid	paid
put		put	put
read		read	read
ride		rode	ridden
run		ran	run
say		said	said
see		saw	seen
sell		sold	sold
send		sent	sent
sing		sang	sung
sit		sat	sat
sleep		slept	slept
speak		spoke	spoken
spend		spent	spent
steal		stole	stolen
swim		swam	swum
take		took	taken
teach		taught	taught
think		thought	thought
throw		threw	thrown
wake (up		woke (up)	woken (up)
wear		wore	worn
win		won	won
write		wrote	written



SUPERGOAL 3 Audio Track List

CD1 Track	Unit	Stı	udent Book Section
2	Unit 1	1	Listen and Discuss Pair Work Listening Pronunciation Conversation Reading
3	Unit 1	2	
4	Unit 1	5	
5	Unit 1	6	
6	Unit 1	8	
7	Unit 1	9	
8	Unit 2	1	Listen and Discuss Pair Work Listening Pronunciation Conversation Reading
9	Unit 2	2	
10	Unit 2	5	
11	Unit 2	6	
12	Unit 2	8	
13	Unit 2	9	
14 15 16 17 18 19	Unit 3	1 2 5 6 8 9	Listen and Discuss Pair Work Listening Pronunciation Conversation Reading
20	Unit 4	1	Listen and Discuss Pair Work Listening Pronunciation Conversation Reading
21	Unit 4	2	
22	Unit 4	5	
23	Unit 4	6	
24	Unit 4	8	
25	Unit 4	9	
26	EXPANSION	3	Reading
27	Units 1–4	5	Chant Along

CD2			
Track	Unit	Stu	udent Book Section
2	Unit 5	1	Listen and Discuss
3	Unit 5	2	Pair Work
4	Unit 5	5	Listening
5	Unit 5	6	Pronunciation
6	Unit 5	8	Conversation
7	Unit 5	9	Reading
8	Unit 6	1	Listen and Discuss
9	Unit 6	2	Pair Work
10	Unit 6	5	Listening
11	Unit 6	6	Pronunciation
12	Unit 6	8	Conversation
13	Unit 6	9	Reading
14	Unit 7	1	Listen and Discuss
15	Unit 7	2	Pair Work
16	Unit 7	5	Listening
17 • • • •	Unit 7.	6	Pronunciation
18	Unit 7	8	Conversation
19	Unit 7	9	Reading

20	Unit 8	1	Listen and Discuss
21	Unit 8	2	Pair Work
22	Unit 8	5	Listening
23	Unit 8	6	Pronunciation
24	Unit 8	8	Conversation
25	Unit 8	9	Reading
26 27	EXPANSION	2 4	Reading Chant Along
23 24 25 26	Unit 8 Unit 8 Unit 8	6 8 9	Pronunciation Conversation Reading

CD3			
Track	Unit	Stu	udent Book Section
2	Unit 9	1	Listen and Discuss Pair Work Listening Pronunciation Conversation Reading
3	Unit 9	2	
4	Unit 9	5	
5	Unit 9	6	
6	Unit 9	8	
7	Unit 9	9	
8	Unit 10	1	Listen and Discuss Pair Work Listening Pronunciation Conversation Reading
9	Unit 10	2	
10	Unit 10	5	
11	Unit 10	6	
12	Unit 10	8	
13	Unit 10	9	
14	Unit 11	1	Listen and Discuss Pair Work Listening Pronunciation Conversation Reading
15	Unit 11	2	
16	Unit 11	5	
17	Unit 11	6	
18	Unit 11	8	
19	Unit 11	9	
20	Unit 12	1	Listen and Discuss Pair Work Listening Pronunciation Conversation Reading
21	Unit 12	2	
22	Unit 12	5	
23	Unit 12	6	
24	Unit 12	8	
25	Unit 12	9	
26	EXPANSION	2	Reading
27		4	Chant Along

6 Reading

8 Chant Along

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

28

29

Units 9-12







SuperGoal 3 Workbook

SuperGoal Series Copyright © 2009 by McGraw-Hill Education

Adaptation Copyright © 2023 by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited

Published by arrangement with McGraw Hill LLC

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. NO PART OF THIS BOOK MAY BE REPRODUCED OR TRANSMITTED IN ANY FORM OR BY ANY MEANS, ELECTRONIC OR MECHANICAL, INCLUDING PHOTOCOPYING, RECORDING OR BY INFORMATION STORAGE AND RETRIEVAL SYSTEMS, WITHOUT PERMISSION IN WRITING FROM MCGRAW HILL.

ISBN: 9781398928503

Contributing Writer: Kevin Sharpe

Publisher: Jorge Rodríguez Hernández Editorial director: Anita Raducanu Art direction: Heloisa Yara Tiburtius Interior design and production: Page2, LLC

Cover design: Page2, LLC Photo coordinator: Kevin Sharpe

Photo Credits: The Photo Credits section for this book on page 270 is considered an extension of the copyright page.

© 2023. Exclusive rights by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited for manufacture and export. This book cannot be re-exported from the country to which it is sold by McGraw-Hill Education (UK) Limited.







WORKBOOK

MANUEL DOS SANTOS





Contents

	Unit	1	Lifestyles	167
<u></u>	Unit	2	Life Stories	173
Term	Unit	3	When Are You Traveling?	179
Te	Unit	4	What Do I Need to Buy?	185
			EXPANSION Units 1–4	191
	Unit	5	Since When?	197
~	Unit	6	Do You Know Where It Is?	203
Term	Unit	7	It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?	209
Te	Unit	8	Drive Slowly!	215
			EXPANSION Units 5–8	221
	Unit	9	All Kinds of People	227
\sim	Unit	10	Who Used My Toothpaste?	233
Term	Unit	11	Making Choices	239
Te	Unit	12	Culture Shock	245
			EXPANSION Units 9–12	251
			Self Reflections	256



1 Lifestyles

A Look at the people in the photos. Complete each description with a word from the box.

a devoted employee

an exercise freak an Internet addict a vegetarian



1. Mark likes to work out. He's really into exercise and fitness. He's _



2. Ali is online all the time, even in the park!



3. Saeed always works on the weekend.

4. Jake never eats meat. He's _____

B Describe each person from **A**. Use the expressions in the box.

usually downloads videos and games always lives a healthy lifestyle frequently spends a lot of time at the gym regularly chats online

normally works out five times a week often spends a lot of time at the office never takes a vacation always eats vegetables

Mark normally works out five times a week .

Mark frequently spends a lot of time at the gym.

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



1 Lifestyles

Write about each photo. Use the words to ask questions and give answers.









Jamal / after school / usually // alway	
---	--

Q: Does Jamal usually ride his bike after school?

A: Jamal always rides his bike after school.

1. Sarah's little brother / usually / in the afternoon // sometimes

Q:____

Δ:

2. Sabah and her friends / usually / on Thursday // often

Q:_____

Δ.

3. George / usually / on Saturday // occasionally

Q:

A:

Write about yourself. Answer the questions. Use adverbs/expressions of frequency.

1. Do you usually sleep late on the weekend?

2. Do you generally do your homework in the afternoon?

3. Do you sometimes watch TV with your family?

4. Do you often chat online with your friends?



Read the chart. Ask and answer a question about each person. Use *How many...?* / How much...? / How long...?

	watch TV	drink soda	exercise	chat online
Hussain	5 hours a week	1 can a day	2 hours a day	3 hours a night
Faris	1 hour a week	3 cans a day	2 hours a week	2 hours a day
Ismail	2 hours a day	2 cans a week	7 days a week	1 hour a day
Noura	3 hours a night	2 liters a month	2 days a week	2 hours a week
Fadwa	1 hour a day	1 liter a week	3 hours a week	6 hours a week
You				

. aarra	Tribar a day	I iiter a week	o nours a week	o modro d week			
You							
Hussain / w	vatch TV						
Q : <u>How mo</u>	any hours a week do	es Hussain watch T	V?				
A: <u>He wat</u>	ches TV 5 hours a v	ueek.					
1. Faris / d	rink soda						
2. Ismail / 6	2. Ismail / exercise Q:						
A:							
	3. Noura / watch TV Q:						
4. Fadwa / chat online Q:							
	A:						
5. you / wa	5. you / watch TV						

6. you / drink sodas A: _____ **7.** you / exercise

8. you / chat online

A: _____



13/4/22 6:47 PM

2022 - 1444

1 Lifestyles

وزارة التعطيم

Complete each sentence with the verb in parentheses. Then rewrite each sentence. Use an adverb of frequency.





		(do) his homework every day.
	Mr. Lewis	<i>uork.</i> (talk) to his boss on the phone in the evening five times a week.
2.	Mrs. Lewis	(watch) TV about once a week.
3.		(eat) chocolate morning, noon, and night.
4.		(make) dinner once a month.
5.	Steve	(work out) four times a week.
	Steve	(not do) the dishes. It's not his job.

G READING

Are You Addicted to Shopping?

Do you love to shop?

Do you shop several times a week?

Do you buy things you don't need just because you have to buy something?

Do you ever spend money you don't really have?

Do you sometimes borrow money for shopping?

Are you a shopping addict? That means you can't stop shopping. Take this test and find out. Circle **yes** or **no**.

1.	Do you think about shopping a lot?	yes	no
2.	Do you feel excited and happy when you are shopping?	yes	no
3.	Are you always planning your next shopping trip?	yes	no
4.	Do you feel nervous when you can't go shopping?	yes	no
5.	Do you go shopping when you are depressed or unhappy?	yes	no
6.	Do you go shopping at least once a day?	yes	no
7.	Do you sometimes buy things you don't need?	yes	no
8.	Do you spend a lot more money than you have?	yes	no
9.	Do you lose track of how much money you spend?	yes	no
10.	Do you say you spend less money than you really spent?	yes	no
11.	Do you want to spend less time shopping?	yes	no

Did you answer **yes** to five or more questions?

You may be a shopping addict. What can you do? You can ask for help from friends. You can get counseling. Shopping shouldn't control you. You should control shopping.

Answer these questions.

- **1.** What are three things that shopping addicts do?
- 2. What are two things shopping addicts can do to change their shopping habit?





Unit 1



1 Lifestyles

Complete the chart with your information. How many hours a week do you spend on each activity? Which things are habits for you? Which things are addictions?









	Talking on the phone	Going shopping	Going online	Watching TV	Your idea:
Hours per week:					
How important is it to you? • very important • important • not important					

WRITING

Now write a paragraph about your activities. How often and how long do you do them? Which are important? Which are not important? Which are habits? Which are addictions? What can you do to change them?

	——————————————————————————————————————	
		_
		_
		_
	•••	
•		
مرارة التيارة ا 1922 - 1444		
03 COMBO TEXT 2022.indb	172	13/4/22 6:47 PM

2 Life Stories

A Unscramble the letters and write the words on the correct announcement.

arptnes	liccin	niodontas	doorn
snwit	dolob	wnernbos	ntfain





B Complete the stories. Use the words from **A**.





1.	In just two days, over 300 people came to give	at the Heart-to-Heart Mobile
	in Lakeside County. Local businessmen and	shoppers were happy to volunteer
	to help others in need. Some people donated blood for the first	time and said they planned to
	do it again. One told doctors that it was his 5	O th time giving blood. The blood
	will go to hospitals around the country and w	ill save many lives.

2. My aunt and uncle are new _____! They have two little _____. They're so small! It's hard to imagine that I was that little when I was an _____!

The other really cool thing is that my two new little cousins look exactly the same. Why? Because they're



مرارت العليم Ministry of Education

2022 - 1444

Unit 2

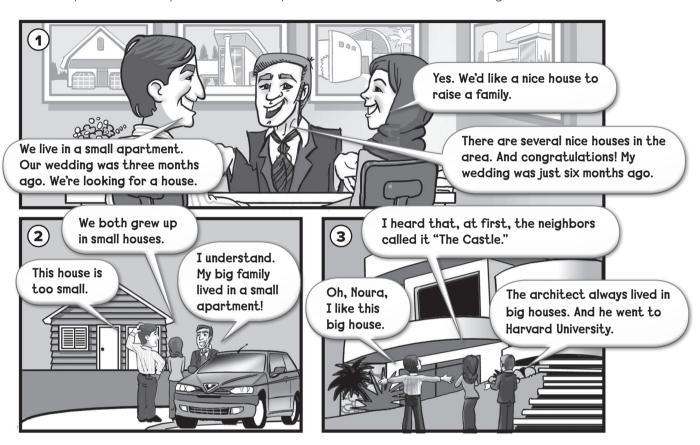
Complete the story. Use the simple past tense of the verbs in parentheses.



Roger and radi (1)	(De) ne	eighbors when they (2) (be)	_ chilaren.	
They (3) (grow up)	together. T	hey (4) (play)	sports		
and (5) (study)	together. They	even (6) (go)	to the same		
college. After college,	Paul (7) (get)	a job with an int	ernational bank in Pari	s and	
(8) (leave)	the country. At first, he (9) (not like)		his job be	ecause	
there (10) (be)	a lot of travel. He also (11) (miss)		his famil	his family a lot.	
After several years, he	e (12) (want)	to move back ho	me and get a new job.	Roger	
(13) (go)	back home after coll	ege. He immediately (14) (take)		
a job at the city library.	At first, he (15) (not be)	happ	y, but his parents		
(16) (need)	him at home, so he	e (17) (stay)	Last year, he		
(18) (start)	to think about a ne	w job and life. He (19)	(want)	to travel	
and see the world. The	en six months ago, Paul (2	20) (move)	back home. A w	veek later,	
he (21) (see)	Roger in the parl	k. Yesterday, they (22)	(go)	_ into	
business together and	l (23) (open)	their own travel	agency!		
Answer the questions a 1. What did Paul and	about the story in C . Roger do when they were	e young?			
2. What did Paul think	about his job at first?				
				•	

E

Noura and Saeed want to buy a house. Mr. Smith is their real estate agent. Complete the sentences below the pictures. Use expressions with the passive in the affirmative and the negative.



Picture 1

- 1. Noura and Saeed ______ three months ago.
- 2. Noura and Saeed six months ago.
- **3.** Mr. Smith ______ six months ago.

Picture 2

- 1. Noura and Saeed ______ in small houses.
- 2. Mr. Smith ______ in a small house.
- 3. Mr. Smith ______ in a small apartment.

Picture 3

- 1. The architect ______ at Harvard University.
- 2. The architect ______ in big houses.
- 3. The house _____ "The Castle."

وزارة التعطيم

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 2

175

Read the information. Complete the conversation. Use *used to* and *didn't use to*.

How Television Has Changed



The 1940s

- TVs have small, round screens.
- Many families eat dinner in front of the TV.
- TVs show only black and white pictures.

The 1950s

- People in big cities get four or five TV stations.
- Cable TV brings big-city TV to some country areas.
- The remote control is invented.

(Omar:	Did you know that some TVs (1)	have round scree	ens?		
Yahya:		Yes, I did. And a lot of families (2) the TV every night.	ont of			
(Omar:	I know. And there (3)	be very many TV stations.			
•	Yahya:	Right. And before 1950, people in co	untry areas (4)	have TV at all!		
(Omar:	They probably (5)	have boring evenings with no ⁻	TV.		
•	Yahya:	Maybe. They probably (6)	go to bed early.			
(Omar:	Can you believe that TVs (7) in black and white.		Everything was		
•	Yahya:		Isn't that crazy? And people (8) stand up and walk over to the TV to change channels. No remote control!			
(Omar:	I'm glad I didn't live back then!				
		re did Ali use to live?				
•		and used to play football after school.				
	A: Y	es, Farah did. She used to take the bus	to school.			
	A: T	hey used to go to the mall every Thurso	day evening.			
	A: N	didn't. I used to stay up really late e				

H READING

Prince William of Britain

Prince William is the grandson of Queen Elizabeth II of Britain. He was born in London, England, on June 21, 1982. He is the elder son of Charles and the late Lady Diana, Prince and Princess of Wales. He has one younger brother named Harry.

William was educated at private schools in England. He attended one of the oldest high schools in England, Eton College. At Eton, he was captain of the football team and took up water polo. After graduation, William took a gap year, during which he trained with the British Army, traveled in Africa, and taught children in a small town in Chile.

He returned in 2001 and enrolled at one of the oldest universities in Scotland. He began studies in art history, but later changed his main subject to geography. William went on to earn



Map of Britain

a Master's degree—the best degree of any heir to the throne of Britain. He then decided to follow a military career and trained at the Royal Military Academy in 2006. He served in the Armed Forces with his brother, and two years later he earned his pilot wings. In 2009, he transferred to the Royal Air Force for helicopter training. He later served as a pilot in the Search and Rescue Force.

Prince William now makes public appearances and performs his many royal duties—among which he is President of England's Football Association. And, like his mother, the late Lady Diana, he continues to help others by actively supporting many humanitarian causes.

Number the sentences in the correct order.

He traveled in Africa and South America.

Prince William went to Eton College.

_____ He trained as a pilot.

_____ Prince William was born in London.

_____ William and Harry served in the Armed Forces.

____ He became a helicopter pilot.

Prince William graduated from university.





Unit 2

2 Life Stories

How is your life different now from when you were seven years old? Complete the chart with your ideas.

When I was seven, I used to:	Now I'm older, and I:



WRITING

Now write a paragraph about your life then and now. Write what you used to do and what you do now.

	Then and Now	
	Then and IVOW	
-		
میلـدـتاا قرازح injekry of Education		
17819 (Frlit 2001) 022 - 1444		
_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb	178	13/4/22 6:47 PM

3 When Are You Traveling?

A Complete the conversations. Use the words in the box.

flight suitcase boarding pass gate baggage carry-on

What time is our

(1) __

to Riyadh?



It's at 4:30, but I don't see the (2) _____

number.

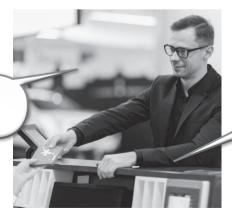
Yes, it is. And then I have one



Is this (3) ______th
only (4) _____you're
going to check?

Is my seat number on my

(6) ______?



Yes, it is, sir. You'll be next to a window.



مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

13/4/22 6:47 PM

3 When Are You Traveling?

B Read the customs declaration. Complete the conversation. Use the present progressive.

(II.s)	STOMS & STOMS	UNITED STATES	OF THE TREASURY CUSTOMS SERVICE DECLARATION	≣ `	FORM APPROVED DMB NO. 1515-0041
	1789	19 CFR 122.27, 148.12	, 148.13, 148.110, 148.111		
th	9	raveler or responsib nformation (only ONE	,		
1.	Name: <u>Hus</u>	sain	Ahmed	A	<u> </u>
	Last		First	1	Middle Initial
2.	Birth Date:	07/11/72	3. Airline/flight	No.:	459
		Day / Month / Year	-		
4. Number of family members traveling with you:1_					
5.	. Country of (Citizenship: KSA	6. Country of R	esiden	ce: <i>KSA</i>
7. U.S. Address: 15 State Street, Miami, FL					
8.	. Expected Le	ength of Stay: <i>two</i>	weeks		
9.	. The purpos	e of my trip is or was	s: Business	X	_ Personal
10.	I am/we are	bringing fruits, plant	s, meats, food,		
	soil, birds, si	nails, other live anim	als, farm products;	YES	NO
	or have bee	en on a farm or ranch	outside the U.S.		X
11.	I am/we are	carrying currency o	r monetary		
	instruments	over \$10,000 U.S., o	or foreign	YES	NO
	equivalent.				<u>X</u>



Customs Officer:	What flight were you on?	
Ahmed:	I was on Flight 459.	
Customs Officer:	How many family members are traveling with you?	
Ahmed:	(1)	My son is with me
Customs Officer:	Where are you staying in the United States?	
Ahmed:	(2)	
Customs Officer:	How long are you visiting the United States?	
Ahmed:	(3)	·
Customs Officer:	Are you bringing any fruits or live plants?	
Ahmed:	(4)	·
Customs Officer:	Are you carrying more than \$10,000 cash?	
Ahmed:	(5)	<u></u> .
Customs Officer:	Are you coming to the United States for business or for pleas	sure?
Ahmed:	(6)	We're visiting family
Customs Officer:	Welcome to the United States. Enjoy your stay here.	
Ahmed:	Thank you!	
وزارة التعــليم		





Complete the conversation. Use the information in the chart. Use *going to* for definite plans and **will** for indefinite plans.

Faisal's Weekend Plans

Thursday	Friday	Saturday
Maybe go to the special Antiquities Exhibition 10:00 A.M.—8:00 P.M.	Definitely go to the Al-Janadriyah Cultural Festival 8:00 A.M.—11:00 P.M.	Maybe ride in the bicycle race 10:30 A.M.—12:30 P.M.
Definitely go to the Champions League football game 8:00 P.M.	Definitely watch the camel races 7:00 P.M.	Probably go to the barbecue at Yahya's house 4:00 P.M.—8:00 P.M.

League football game		races	at Yahya's house	
8:00 P	.M.	7:00 P.M.	4:00 P.M.—8:00 P.M.	
Thursda	У			
Adnan:	Hi, Faisal. What are yo	ou doing?		
Faisal: I'm making plans		ne weekend. Maybe I (1) (go)		t
	the special Antiquities	Exhibition on Thursday after	noon.	
Adnan:	That's going to be inte	eresting! Are you going to sta	ay all afternoon?	
Faisal:	* *	probably (stay) _	for an hou	r or two
	Do you want to go?			
Adnan:	Sure! And I definitely (League football game		to the Champ	ions
Faisal:	Me, too. Let's get there			
Adnan:	_		the first people	n thoro
Faisal:			great seats for sure	
Friday	mats OK. We (5) (iiiic		great seats for sure	:
Friday Faisal:	Are you going to go to	o the Al-Janadriyah Cultural F	Fostival on Friday?	
Adnan:		·	the whole afternoon t	horo
Aumam.	,	lots		nere.
Faisal:		there		
	, ,			_ at 4:0
Adnan:	Then what are you go	ing to do?		
	I (10) (watch)			

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 181

Ministry of Education

2022 - 1444

Unit 3

3 When Are You Traveling?

Complete the answers to the questions with infinitives of purpose. Use the information in the photos for your answers. Use the verbs in the box.

inish	visit	go surfing	work out	catch	buy	
			2		3	
្ន: Wh	y is your father	going to the train	station?			4
A :	de's going to the	e train station to o	catch a train.	_		6
. Q:	Why is he stay	ing up late?				
A:				his ho	mework.	
2. Q:	Why are they o	online?				(5)
A:				the	ir tickets.	
3. Q:	Why are they f	lying to California?	?			
A:				their gran	dparents.	1
l. Q:	Why is he goin	ng to Mexico?				
A:						·
5. Q:	Why is he goir	ng to the gym after	school?			
A:						·
Vrite t	hree sentences	. Tell where you wil	l probably go nex	t week. Use ir	nfinitives of p	ourpose.
j	I will probably	go to the mall to I	buy a new pair o	f shoes.		
			,			
	2: Wha: // A: // A: A: A: A: A: A: A: A: A:	Q: Why is your father A: He's going to the A: Why is he stay A: A: Q: Why are they of A: A: A: Why is he goin A: Write three sentences I will probably of I	2: Why is your father going to the train A: He's going to the train station to a A: A:	2: Why is your father going to the train station? A: He's going to the train station to catch a train. 1. Q: Why is he staying up late? A: 2. Q: Why are they online? A: 3. Q: Why are they flying to California? A: 4. C: Why is he going to Mexico? A: 5. Q: Why is he going to the gym after school? A: Write three sentences. Tell where you will probably go nex I will probably go to the mall to buy a new pair of	2: Why is your father going to the train station? A: He's going to the train station to catch a train. A: He's going to the train station to catch a train. A:	2. Why is your father going to the train station? A: He's going to the train station to catch a train. 1. Q: Why is he staying up late? A:

G READING

GUIDE TO NIAGARA FALLS

Things to Do

There is a lot for the whole family to do in Niagara Falls. A helicopter ride provides a wonderful view of both the American falls and the Canadian falls. During the ride, you can take great pictures to show your friends back home. A favorite with all the tourists is the Journey Behind the Falls. You'll put on a raincoat, take an elevator, and get out at the bottom of the falls. From there, you'll see, hear, and feel the excitement as the water crashes down from the height of a twenty-story building. It's an unforgettable experience!



Places to Stay

The Broadview Hotel

Many visitors want to stay at the Broadview. The rooms are small, but the views of the falls are wonderful. The hotel restaurant is good, but very fancy. You'll have to wear your best clothes. The Broadview is expensive, but its guests receive very special treatment. And for your information, the hotel doesn't have a pool, but it has excellent workout facilities for people who like to exercise.

Martin's Motel

Martin's Motel is a really friendly place. When you check in, Martin shows you to your room. The rooms aren't fancy, but they're large and they have cable TV. There is an outdoor swimming pool and a game room especially for children. It's just a 15-minute walk to the falls. And if you're hungry, you can eat at the diner next door. The food is good and cheap, and the diner is open 24 hours a day. You won't have to dress up to eat there. Families that stay at Martin's always have a good time.

Write **T** for **True** or **F** for **False**

	write I for Irue or F for Faise.					
	1. Visitors wear raincoats to go behind the falls.					
	2. You can't take pictures on the helicopter ride.					
	3	The Broadview Hotel has a pool.				
	4	The Broadview Hotel has wonderful views of the falls.				
	5	Martin's Motel is close to the falls.				
	6	You have to wear a suit or dress to eat at the diner next to Martin's Motel.				
Н		se questions about the reading. stay at the Broadview Hotel or Martin's Motel. Where will you probably stay? Why?				
• • •	2. You can	take the helicopter ride or the Journey Behind the Falls trip. Which will you probably by?				

مرارة Ministry of Education

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 183

2022 - 1444

Unit 3

183

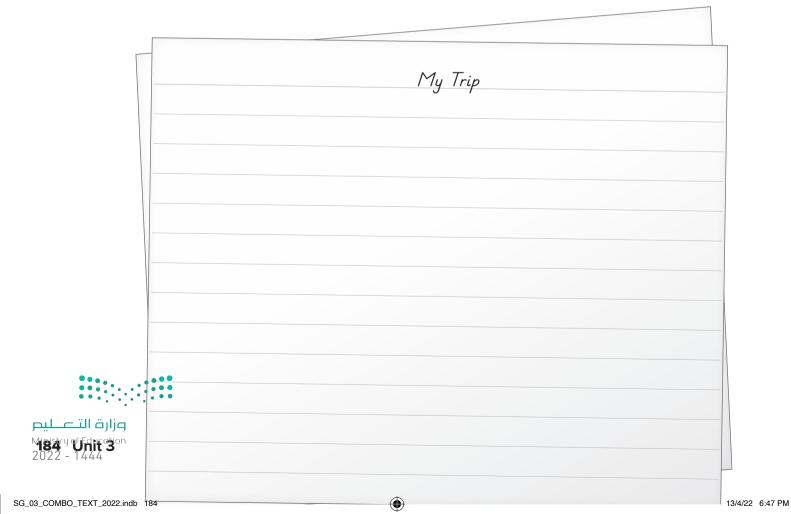
3 When Are You Traveling?

You are talking to a travel agent. You're telling the travel agent about the trip you want to take. Complete the travel agent's notes from your conversation.

- 1. Where do you want to go?
- 2. What are you going to do while you're there?
- 3. When are you going to leave?
- 4. How long are you going to stay?
- 5. What airport do you want to leave from?
- 6. Who is going with you?
- 7. What kind of hotel do you want to stay at?
- 8. What sights do you want to see?

J WRITING

Now write a paragraph about your trip. Use the information from the travel agent's form above.



4 What Do I Need to Buy?

A Write the name of each food.



1.



2.



3.



_



5. _____



6.



7. _____



8. _____



9.



10. _____

B Complete the chart with the words from **A**.

Meat	Seafood	Dairy	Fruit	Vegetables

مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



4 What Do I Need to Buy?

С	Complete the story. Use a few , a little , and a lot of .						
	Badria started a new diet called the Fat Flush Program. This is what she told me about it:						
	"At first, I didn't understand the diet because there were (1) rules—about						
	three pages of them! For example, you have to take 1 tablespoon of oil twice a day. That's not						
	(2) oil, but it helps you lose weight for some reason. You need to drink						
	(3) lemon juice (about a tablespoon) in water twice a day.						
	Fruits are part of the diet. You can have (4) pieces of fruit—one, two, or three						
	pieces—every day. You can eat (5) different vegetables. In fact, you can eat al						
	the vegetables you want, including beans, broccoli, cucumbers, onions, and 25 more. But you can						
	only have (6) spices. They cause problems with this diet. You need to drin						
	(7) water—at least eight glasses a day! I don't know if I can do that all the time						
	You can't eat (8) meat—only 225 grams once a day. But that doesn't bother m						
	l usually eat only (9) meat anyway. There are only (10) things						
	on the diet that I never eat—actually just two things—lamb and tomatoes. And they encourage						
	you to get (11) exercise, but not too much. All in all, I think it's a good program.						
1	Badria takes a lot of oil each day. She doesn't take much oil each day.						
	1. Badria drinks a lot of lemon juice in water.						
	2. Badria can eat a few vegetables on the diet.						
	3. She can use a lot of spices.						
E							
	Write about what you eat or drink a lot of and what you don't eat or drink enough of.						
1	I eat a lot of ice cream, but I don't eat enough yogurt.						
	1						
••	2.						
• •	3. <u>· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·</u>						
، الت	ມlig						

F Read the recipe. Write questions and answers about it. Use **how much** and **how many**.

Mushroom and Cheese Omelet

- Cut 6 mushrooms into small pieces.
- Chop a piece of 1 onion.
- Cut up ¼ cup of cheddar cheese.
- Whip 3 eggs in a bowl.
- Add a little salt and pepper to the eggs.
- Melt 1 tablespoon of butter in a frying pan.
- Pour the ingredients into the frying pan and cook for 3 minutes.

5. I'm so hungry. I haven't eaten _____ all day!

_ that it calls for.

3: J'm going to buy some food at the supermarket. Can I get you

7. I can't make this recipe for dinner. I have absolutely

Fahd: No, I don't. I don't like _____ with cheese.

6. Badr: Do you like pizza?



	you / need / eggs	3. you / cut up / mushrooms
	Q : How many eggs do you need?	Q:
	A: I need three eggs.	A:
	1. you / use / butter	4. you / cut up / cheese
	Q:	Q:
	A:	A:
	2. you / add / salt	5. you / use / onions
	Q:	Q:
	A:	A:
j	Complete the sentences. Use something , anythi	ng , and nothing .
	1. We eat a lot of food at my house. We always	need from the supermarket.
	2. Are you hungry? Go to the kitchen. There's	in the refrigerator for you to ea
	3. What a delicious lunch! But don't you have _	to drink with it?
	4. I love fresh fruit. In fact, there's a good piece of watermelon on a hot summ	

Pul حتاا قراازم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 4



4 What Do I Need to Buy?

H Look at the recipe for fruit salad. Rewrite the recipe in the correct order.

Fruit Salad

- Mix well and put the bowl in the refrigerator for three hours.
- Cut up 1 pineapple, 1 cup of strawberries, 2 oranges, and 1 cup of apples.
- Add ½ cup of sugar and ¼ cup of lemon juice.
- Put the fruit in a large bowl.





Fruit Salad			





Now rewrite the recipe. Use the sequence words in the box.

after that finally first then

- 1. _____
- 2.
- 3. _____





J READING

Food Is Not Just for Food

Do you like bananas on cereal, roasted garlic, or cucumbers in salad? Believe it or not, each of these foods is also a medicine. Thousands of years ago people started using foods to cure everyday health problems. Today, people still use many of these foods as medicines. Each culture has its own favorite food remedies. Here is a short list of illnesses and some of the foods people use to cure them.





Headaches

- Peel several very ripe bananas. Wrap the peels in two different pieces of cloth. Place one over the back of your neck and the other on your forehead.
- Peel a large lemon. Rub the skin of the lemons on your forehead. Then put the pieces in a cloth and place it on your forehead. The pain will stop.

Tired, Red Eyes

- Peel and slice up a very ripe apple. Let the fruit get brown. Place the pieces on your closed eyes. Leave them on for at least half an hour.
- Place thin slices of cucumber over your closed eyes and lie quietly for a few minutes.

A Cold

- Put two cloves of crushed garlic in a bowl of boiling water. Add one tablespoon of vinegar. Cover your head and the bowl with a towel. Breathe in the warm vapors.
- Soak a piece of brown paper in vinegar. Shake pepper on one side. Place the peppered side of the paper on your chest. Leave it there all night, if possible.

Have you ever heard of any of these remedies? Most people in the medical profession say that there is little research to prove any positive results from these old food remedies.

Complete the sentences. Use the information in the reading.

- 1. People eat food. Some people use food as _______.
- 2. To take away a ______, you can use ripe bananas.
- **3.** Some people use ripe ______ to make their eyes feel better.
- **4.** Cucumber slices can help your ______
- **5.** Some people say garlic and ______ will make a cold go away.

مرات التيام الت

Unit 4

189

4 What Do I Need to Buy?

What is your favorite meal? Make a shopping list for it. Complete the chart below with all the different food items for the meal. Then think about the supermarket you'll go to. Where are the different food items in that supermarket? Use a number to show the order in which you will buy the food at your supermarket.

Favorite Meal:

Food Group	Food Items	Shopping Trip Order
Meat / Seafood		
Breads and Grains		
Vegetables		
Fruits		
Dairy Products		
Other		







WRITING

Now write a paragraph about your shopping trip at your supermarket. Use the information from your shopping list above. Use sequence words like *first*, *then*, *after that*, and *finally*.

	My Shopping Trip	
•••••		
ميلحتاا قرازع المحمد في المحمد الم المحمد المحمد br>المحمد المحمد		
COMBO TEXT 2022.indb	190	13/4/22 6:47 PM

	often / you / eat / sandwiches / for lunch
Q : <u>H</u>	ow often do you eat sandwiches for lunch?
4: <u>I</u>	isually eat sandwiches for lunch.
Q:	ow often / you / walk / school
Q:	ow often / you / watch / TV
Q:	ow often / you / clean / your room
Q:	ow often / you / go / to the mall
5. Ha	ow often / you / do / your homework
Q:	
Q: A:	
Q: A: Write Q: <u>W</u>	the question for each answer. Use the simple past tense. There did your uncle live?
Q: A: Write Q: <u>W</u>	the question for each answer. Use the simple past tense.
Q: A: Write Q: <u>W</u> A: My	the question for each answer. Use the simple past tense. There did your uncle live? To uncle lived in New York.
Q: A: Write Q: <u>W</u> A: My I. Q: A: 2. Q:	the question for each answer. Use the simple past tense. There did your uncle live? To uncle lived in New York.
Q: A: Write Q: <u>W</u> A: My I. Q: A: A: A: 3. Q:	the question for each answer. Use the simple past tense. There did your uncle live? Tuncle lived in New York. Amal watched TV yesterday evening.

•

191

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 191

C	Со	omplete each sentence. Use the simple past tense.	
	1.	They're not going to play basketball tonight, but they basketball last r	ight.
	2.	I am not meeting my friend for lunch today. I my friend for lunch yeste	rday.
	3.	She doesn't usually get sick, but she sick last week. She had a cold.	
	4.	He doesn't usually study on weekends, but he this past weekend.	
	5.	We don't usually grow tomatoes in my garden, but we some this past	summer.
	6.	He usually goes skiing on vacation, but he surfing last month on vaca	tion.
	7.	I don't usually make mistakes on my math homework, but I three mistakes homework yesterday.	akes on my
	8.	I don't usually have to do the dishes, but I to do them last night.	
	9.	My friend and I didn't go shopping yesterday, but we every day last w	eek.
1	0.	My father didn't drive me to school this morning, but he me to school	yesterday.
1	Q:	What did Khalil use to play? Khalil used to play basketball.	
	1.	Ibrahim ate a lot of fast food. Q:	
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		My brother and I drank milk every morning before school. Q: •••• A:	

492 EXPANSION Units 1–4 2022 - 1444

E	Write	sentences	about you,	your family,	or your	friends.
---	-------	-----------	------------	--------------	---------	----------

6			
1	be	bo	rn

I was born in Jizan on January 23, 1997.

- 1. be married
- 2. be raised
- 3. be called
- 4. be educated
- Look at the picture. Write about Robert's plans for the day with his friend. Use the present progressive.



Robert is going to the bus station today.



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

EXPANSION Units 1–4 193

G Complete the sentences. Use **be going to** or **will**.

1.	I'm not sure. I probably	(fly) to Dubai tomorrow.
2.	My plans are definite. I(go)	to the mall with my friend tonight.
3.	She isn't sure. She probably	(leave) in the afternoon.
4.	He didn't make definite plans. He probably	(see) his uncle next week.
5.	They didn't tell me their final plans. They probably tomorrow morning.	(arrive)
6.	I checked the schedule. The train	(leave) at 7:30 tomorrow morning.

Look at the photo of Jeff. Write sentences about what he is going to do.
Write sentences about what he will probably do.

l.	What is Jeff going to do?

2. What will Jeff probably do?





What do you and your family conserve at home? How do you conserve at home? Complete the chart below.

Conservation at Home

What we conserve	How we conserve	How we will probably conserve
Electricity	turn off lights	watch less TV
Water		not wash the family car
Other		

WRITING

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 195

Write a paragraph to tell how you conserve at home and what you will probably do to conserve in the future.

	Conservation at Hor	ne
		,,,,
وزارة التعـــ		
try of Educat ion		EXPANSION Ur
2 - 1444		

195

K Complete the sentences. Use expressions of quantity. Sometimes more than one answer is possible. 1. I'm on a diet, so I only eat _____ ice cream. 2. I don't use _____ salt. I really don't like it. 3. Did you get _____ pineapple? If you want more, I have another one in the refrigerator. **4.** I only eat ______ eggs each week. I don't think they are really good for my heart. **5.** _____ papayas did you buy at the market? **6.** Wow! That's hot! Did you put ______ pepper in the soup? **7.** ______ butter are you going to put on your potato? 8. I don't like this restaurant's menu. There aren't ______ appetizers on it. Complete the conversation. Use **something**, **anything**, and **nothing**. I'm going to the supermarket. Can I get you (1) _____? Hanan: No, thank you. I don't want (2) ______. I went shopping yesterday. Maha: I went to the supermarket yesterday, too! But I have (3) _____ for dinner this evening. Oh, no! I don't have (4) ______ for dinner either! Can you pick Maha: (5) up for me?

- M Write a recipe. Put the expressions from the list in the correct order and use sequence words in your sentences.
 - stir the eggs for one minute
 - pour the eggs into a frying pan
 - · crack four eggs into a bowl
 - cook the eggs for three minutes





5 Since When?

Term 🖊

A Complete the sentences about the photos. Use the words in the box.

brick	printer	clumsy	conventional	device
household	microwave oven	image	huge	light

My aunt was at my house yesterday. She and my mom made cookies. I noticed that my mom never uses the **(1)** ______ to make the cookies. My mom says that some things bake better the old-fashioned way, in a





(2) ______ oven. That's why a lot of (3) _____ kitchens

today have both types of oven.

Cell phones are very small today. And they have always been small. Well, that's what I thought! Then my older brother showed me one of the very first cell phones. My father had one in a box in the garage. It was not small at all! It was big and (4) _____. And when my brother handed it to me, I almost dropped it because it was so heavy. And that's why people called it the **(5)** ______. It's amazing how our cell phones today are so small and so





My new laptop computer is really amazing. It is so small and fast. I love it. I really only needed one other (7) ______ to go with it. I needed a (8) ______. But I didn't have to buy it. The store gave me one when I bought the laptop. What a deal! My parents just bought a new TV. It's a big screen TV, and that

means that the screen is **(9)** _____! It's awesome! The (10) _____ on the screen is





crystal dear and the sound is amazing.

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 5



5 Since When?

В	Сс	Complete the conversations. Use the simple past.				
	1.	Mona:	When did you arrive at school this morning?			
		Sabah:	I at school at 8 o'clock.			
	2.	Ahmed:	Where did Yahya eat lunch yesterday?			
		Faris:	He lunch at the mall.			
	3.	Sultan:	What time Imad you last night?			
		Fahd:	Imad called me at 10:30 p.m.			
	4.	Amina:	When did Noura and you finish your homework yesterday?			
		Fadwa:	We our homework just before dinner.			
	5.	Asma:	Who passed the history test last week?			
		Nawal:	No one that test!			
	6.	Jabir:	When you at the park?			
		Ismail:	I was at the park yesterday during the football game.			
C	Write complete sentences. Use the present perfect. I / see / the Great Wall I've seen the Great Wall. 1. my brother / play tennis / in the new park					
	2.	Saeed / tr	y / to learn French			
	3. we / go camping / in the mountains					
	4. my parents / eat / at the Indian restaurant by the bookstore					
D	Write questions for the statements in C .					
	2					
• • •	3. ⊿					
، التــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	 زارڌ	9				
of Ede	cati	ON				

E Complete the paragraph with the verbs in parentheses. Use the present perfect or the simple past tense.

My uncle	(1. make) a lot of inventions. Some of his inventions		
	_ (2. work), and others	(3. not be) very successful.	
When I	(4. be) 12 years old, I	(5. walk) to school every	
day. That year, my uncl	e(6. give) me	e one of his new inventions—a hat	
with an umbrella. He _		at umbrella	
(8. be) it one of his suc	cessful inventions? Let's just say that w	re (9. not	
talk) about it in years! V	Vell, that's not completely true. Last yea	ar, my uncle	
(10. wear) one of his ha	at umbrellas to my graduation. It	(11. be) really	
funny! And after dinner	; he (12. give)	it to me. I think I'm the only person in	
the world who	(13. receive) two hat r	umbrellas as qifts!	

- F Complete each sentence with **for** or **since**.
 - **1.** Robert got sick two days ago. He has been sick _____ two days.
 - 2. Daniel got his new car three weeks ago. He has had his new car ______ three weeks.
 - **3.** Carlos started to play tennis in 2006. He has played tennis ______ 2006.
 - **4.** My brother last spoke to his friend two hours ago.

 He hasn't spoken to him ______ two hours.
 - **5.** My uncle moved to New York City in 2007.

He has lived in New York City ______ 2007.











SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 199

199

5 Since When?

Write a question and two answers for each photo. Use *How long*, *for*, and *since*.

	07	
٦	W	
	ж.	

chicken / be / in the microwave / three o'clock // 15 minutes

- Q: How long has the chicken been in the microwave?
- A: The chicken has been in the microwave since three o'clock.
- A: The chicken has been in the microwave for 15 minutes.



- 1. Tom and Kenneth / use / laptops / four years old // almost their entire lives
 - Q: ____
 - A: _____
 - A: _____



- 2. Chris / play football / eight years old // seven years
 - Q:____
 - A: _____
 - A: _____



- **3.** Alex and Sam / play video games / this afternoon // forty minutes
 - Q: _____
 - Δ·
 - . .



- **4.** Omar / go / to this dentist / 2006 // many years
 - Q:_____
 - A: _____
 - A: _____



- **5.** Grandma / have / her tea set / get married // over forty years
 - Q:____
 - A: _____
 - A: _____







Since the 1700s, people have tried many different ways of traveling over land. They wanted to move more quickly and more comfortably than they could on horseback. Inventors have produced several different kinds of car engines since 1760. First, they tried steam engines. But they were noisy, and the driver had to stop frequently to get more water. Then they tried gasoline engines. The inventor of the modern gasoline-powered automobiles was a German named Karl Benz. He made his first car in 1886. His company later became Mercedes Benz, and it is still making cars today.

Automobile companies have added many improvements to cars over the years. Have you been in a car in rainy or snowy weather? Was it difficult to see the other cars on the road? A hundred years ago, it was almost impossible to drive in bad weather. People had to get out of their cars and wipe the windshields of their cars every few minutes. However, today, we have

windshield wipers. M. Anderson invented the windshield wiper in 1903, and by 1913 almost all American cars had them. And today you can't buy a car without them.

Another invention that has become very popular is the bucket seat. Steve McQueen, a famous American actor, invented this type of seat. McQueen worked on cars and was a race car driver. He needed a seat that was comfortable when his car was going very fast. Have you ever sat in a bucket seat? It's lower than a regular seat, and most people say it's more comfortable. Manufacturers have put bucket seats in cars for over thirty years now.

Auto manufacturers have improved cars. They've added things that make driving easier and more comfortable for drivers. Windshield wipers and bucket seats were only the beginning. Now many cars have GPS devices and even computers to help drivers park. Cars have come a long way in one hundred years!

Write **T** for **True** and **F** for **False**.

- 1. _____ There have been cars with engines since 1760.
- 2. _____ The first cars had gasoline engines.
- **3.** _____ Most American cars had windshield wipers in 1903.

4. ____An actor invented the bucket seat.

5. _____ American cars have had bucket seats since 1913.

Unit 5

3/4/22 6:47 PM

Complete the chart. List inventions that have been important to you. Tell why each one has been important.







How have they changed my life?

cell pho

cell phone	always able to talk to friends

WRITING

Now write about the inventions you listed in the chart above. Write how each one has made your life better or worse, easier or harder.

These Inventions Have Changed My Life



6 Do You Know Where It Is?

A Look at the photos. Circle the one that matches the description best.

1. cleaner air





2. lower cost of living





3. larger green space





4. better public transportation system





B Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box.

public transportation system green spaces punctual

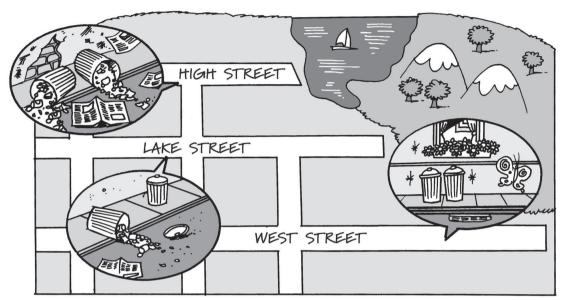
cozy housing quality of life crime rate efficient cost of living

- **2.** Berlin's ______ is awesome. We visited the city last year. And they have an amazing subway. It's always on time and doesn't cost a lot. It's very _____ and _____.
- **3.** An apartment and a small house are two examples of ______ that is available in the city. Both the houses and apartments aren't very big. They're really small and
- **4.** I love Denver, Colorado. It's an awesome city to live in. There are a lot of trees and parks. With all the _______ here in the city, it's really easy to go walking or cycling whenever I want. That's important to me, my family, and my friends. We think the ______ in Denver is the best of any city in the world.

مرارة التحليم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 6

c Fill in the correct comparatives and superlatives.



1.	Lake Street is	((long)	than	High	Street.

- 2. High Street is the _____ (short) street.
- 3. Lake Street is ______ (short) than West Street.
- **4.** West Street is the ______ (long).
- **5.** Lake Street is _____ (clean) than High Street.
- **6.** High Street is the ______ (dirty) street.
- 7. Lake Street is ______ (dirty) than West Street.
- 8. West Street is the ______(clean).
- Complete the sentences. Use comparatives or superlatives. Use the adjective **expensive**.

ROGERS REALTY

Fine Apartments – Low Prices!

- Come live at **the City Center**. One-bedroom apartments are \$500 a month.
- One-bedroom apartments at the Plaza House are \$700 a month.
- **The Amazon** has very special one-bedroom apartments with large balconies. Only \$1,000 a month!

The City Center has the least expensive apartments	
1. The Amazon is	than the Plaza House.
2. The Cry Center is	than the Plaza House.
 وزارة التــ	

6 Do You Know Where It Is?

Billy:	I like the mountains. The weather is always _ (1. cool) in the mountains than at the beach.			
Dave:	That's right. But I like the sun, and the beach is (2. sunny) than the mount	ains.		
Billy:	That's true. But it's(3. quie mountains. I can hike through the woods and of birds. I like that.			
Dave:	Well, the beach is (4. noise than the mountains, but there is always someone to talk to.	y)		
Billy:	I think that people in the mountains are the (5. friendly) people I've ever met. I know all my neighbors.			
Dave:	I am always meeting new people at the beach. They're usually on vacation and are from all over the world. In fact, they're the(6. interesting) people			
	I know.			
Billy:	I'm happy you like the beach. But I'll stay in the mountains. It's the (7. good) place in the whole world!			-
Dave:	And I'm happy you like the mountains. But I still think the beach is (8. good) than the mountains!	An a wear		
	o you want to live, in the mountains or at the beac prefer to live there. Use comparatives or superlati		itences about	
•				
•				

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

13/4/22 6:47 PM

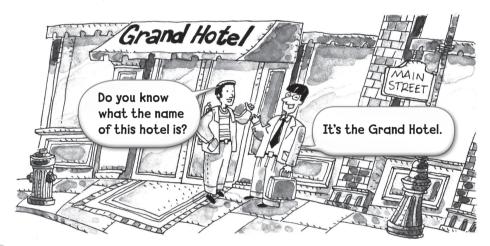
6 Do You Know Where It Is?

G Complete the sentences. Use comparisons with as...as.

1	The office building is ten stories tall. The School building is $\frac{as tall as}{a}$	·
	·	s \$1.00. The subway ticket costs \$1.00, too the subway ticket.
	2. The pizza at Joe's is good, and the pure Joe's pizza is	3
	3. Apartments cost \$700 a month. Hou Apartments aren't	

Chicago in the winter isn't _____ Houston in the winter.

H Write indirect questions for the answers.



4. Houston is warm in the winter. Chicago is not warm at all in the winter.

Ali wants to know the name of this hotel.

Q: know / what Do you know what the name of this hotel is?

A: It's the Grand Hotel.

1. Amira wants you to tell her the time the bank closes.

Q: could / when _____

A: The bank closes at 4 o'clock.

2. Hameed wants to know the location of the gym.

Q: know / where _____

A: Yes. It's on Main Street.

3. Fahd wants to know the cost of a train ticket.

Q: could / how much _____

A: It costs \$5.00.

4. Farah needs to know when the supermarket opens.

A: Yes. It opens at 8:00 in the morning.



READING

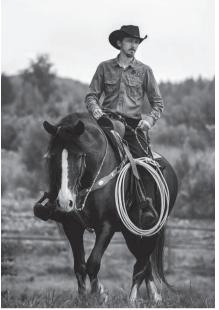
Small Town America

Do you know what the expression "small town America" means? Sometimes people use it to describe living in a small town in the U.S.A. There's a big difference between the quality of life in a large city and in a small town. That's true in any country.

Some people prefer to live in the city because there are a lot of people to meet, a lot of places to eat, and a lot of things to do. The pace of life is faster in a big city than it is in a small town. So for some people, the expression "small town" or "small town America" is another way to say that something is slow or even boring.









Officially a town has to have less than 10,000 residents to be considered a small town. In other words, a small town is even smaller than a small city. Many young people who grow up in small towns leave for life in the big city. But there are those who regret their move to the big city and want to move back to their small town life. Why? Many miss the

community—the friendly neighbors, the close friends, and the looking out for the other person that are often characteristic of a vibrant small town.

The top ten best small towns in the U.S.A. are voted on annually. These are the towns that people miss when they move away. These are the towns that have citizens who are excited about living in their small town. Recently, Hammondsport, New York was voted the best small town in America.

Young people in small town America often do very different things for fun than their big city counterparts. Some of the exciting things young people in small town America do include riding ATVs (all terrain vehicles), riding horses, and even riding snowmobiles when it snows!

Answer the questions.

- 1. What are three reasons some people like to live in a big city?
- 2. How many people have to live in a town for the town to be considered a small town?
- **3.** Why do some people regret moving to the big city from a small town?
- 4. What is the name of the town that was recently voted as the best small town in America?

5. What are three things that young people like to do in small towns?

مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 6

6 Do You Know Where It Is?

Think about where you live and where a friend or relative lives that is somewhere different (maybe even another country). Complete the chart with adjectives that describe the town or place where you live and where your friend or relative lives.

Where I Live		
Where My	Lives	
Where My	Lives	
Where My	Lives	

K WRITING

Now write a paragraph about where you live and where your friend or relative lives. Compare the two places. Use the information from the chart above.



7 It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?

A Write the name of each item.



1. _____



6. _____



Marie Contraction of the Contrac



7. _____



3. _____



8.



4.



9.



E



10.

B Where do the items belong? Complete the chart with the words from **A**.

Garage	Kitchen	Bedroom

<mark>صیلحتاا قرازم</mark> Ministry of Education

2022 - 1444

7 It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?

Read the situations. Circle the letter of the correct question for the situation.



- **1.** It's very early in the morning, and Faisal is still sleepy. Some coffee will help wake him up. His wife asks him:
 - a. You want a cup of coffee, don't you?
 - b. You want a cup of coffee, do you?



- 2. Patricia is excited about going to garage sales this morning. Tonya is going with her. As they get near the first garage sale, Patricia gets even more excited. Patricia looks at Tonya and notices that Tonya doesn't seem excited at all. Patricia is curious about that. She asks Tonya:
 - a. You've been to a garage sale before, haven't you?
 - b. You've been to a garage sale before, have you?



- **3.** Don finds a colorful shirt in a box at a garage sale. He picks up the shirt and looks at it. He's not sure if he wants to buy it. His wife definitely doesn't want him to buy the shirt. She politely lets Don know that he shouldn't buy the shirt. She says:
 - a. You don't want that shirt, don't you?
 - b. You don't want that shirt, do you?



- **4.** Andrew is looking at a sweater. He likes it, but isn't sure about the price. His wife looks at the sweater and its price, too. She is thinking the same thing that Andrew is thinking, so she says:
 - a. This sweater is too expensive, is it?
 - **b.** This sweater is too expensive, isn't it?

7 It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?

Two friends see each other at a garage sale. This is the first time they've spoken in five years. Complete their tag questions. Give the expected responses.

Alan: You have some great stuff here, Scott. Your garage sale is a big success.

Scott: Thanks, Alan. And it's good to see you again.

Alan: Yeah. It's been at least five years, (1)______

Scott: (2)

Alan: Those skis in the garage aren't for sale, (3) ?

Scott: (4)____

Alan: You were a champion downhill skier, (5) ?

Scott: (6)_____

Alan: And you won a lot of medals in competitions, (7)______?

Alan: You don't compete anymore, (9)______?

Scott: (10)

Alan: But you still enjoy skiing, (11)_____?

Scott: (12)

Alan: You haven't thought about becoming a ski instructor, (13)_____?

Scott: (14)

Alan: You see, my nephew and I really want to learn how to ski. You can teach us,

(15) ?

Scott: Well, of course, (16)______

Answer the tag questions. Use your own information.

1. You haven't finished high school, have you?

- **2.** You brushed your teeth this morning, didn't you?
- **3.** You haven't cleaned your room today, have you?
- 4. Your parents have been married for a long time, haven't they?
- **5.** Your English teacher is very intelligent, isn't he/she?



Scott: (8)___

مرارة التحليم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 7

211

7 It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?

- Write negative questions for the following situations.
 - It's raining. Your sister is leaving the house without an umbrella.

 Aren't you taking an umbrella with you?
 - **1.** You and your friend planned to do research on the Internet with your friend's laptop. Your friend just arrived at your house, but you don't see a laptop.
 - 2. Your friend told you to meet at 5:00 P.M. in the mall. You're in the mall. It's now 5:30, and your friend isn't there. You get a call on your cell phone from your friend who is still at home.
 - **3.** You and your family are going for a walk at the beach. Everyone is ready to leave, but your brother is in his room playing video games.
 - **4.** You and your friends are at a new Japanese restaurant. You order food for everyone. You notice that your friends aren't eating their food. You are not sure they like what you ordered.
- G Complete the paragraph about Roger. Use the correct form of **be able to**.

- (5. be able to) hit the ball hard and fast. Now I'm 16 years old. Next month I will be in my first big tournament. I hope that I
- (6. be able to) win a few matches. I am going to compete against some really good players. But no matter what, I'll have a good time, and I
 - ____ (**7.** be able to) say that I did my best.





H READING

A Special Bond

There is a very special bond—or tie—between identical twins. Of course, identical twins look alike. When they get older, they sometimes even have the same number of wrinkles around their eyes. Most twins also share a special bond, an amazing feeling of closeness with each other. And identical twins behave alike. For example, one pair of twins both walk into the ocean backward and only up to their knees.



For John and William Bloomfield, the special bond went beyond life. The Bloomfield twins did everything together. One night they were eating dinner together at a restaurant. John—or perhaps it was William—had a heart attack and died. His brother immediately had a heart attack and died, too. The medics couldn't save either brother, or even figure out who was John and who was William.

California twins Ronald and Donald Anderson shared a single life. Everyone thought there was only one Mr. Anderson. One day Ronald Anderson robbed a bank. The police were sure that Ronald Anderson was the thief. They saw him running away. There was one problem: When the bank was robbed, Ronald Anderson was already in jail. If he was in jail, he was not the thief. The police were confused. Finally, they found the answer. There were two Anderson brothers—twins! For many years, they pretended to be one person. *Donald* Anderson was in jail. *Ronald* Anderson robbed the bank. Now Ronald Anderson is in jail, too.

Answer the questions.

1.	What is the spe	ecial bond betwee	en twins?

- 2. How did John and William Bloomfield die?
- 3. What was unusual about their deaths?
- 4. Why did people think that there was only one Mr. Anderson?

5. Who really robbed the bank?

مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

7 It's a Good Deal, Isn't It?

1	Think about several things you are learning to do. For example, are you learning to play a sport or to
	speak a new language? Write them on the lines below.

Now complete the chart with information about one of the things you are learning to do.

Past	Present	Future
What was I able to do? I was only able to say the alphabet.	What am I able to do now?	What will I be able to do?
What wasn't I able to do?	What am I not able to do now?	What won't I be able to do?

WRITING

Now write a paragraph about what you are learning to do. Use the information from your chart above.



8 Drive Slowly!

A Look at the photos of different cars. Identify the parts of the car.

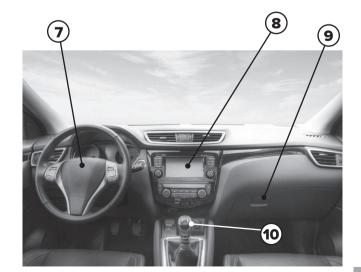
- 1. _____
- 2. _____
- 3. _____
- 4. _____



- 5
- 6



- 7. _____
- 8.
- 9.
- 10.





مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444 Read the rules and advice that Mr. Day gave his students. Use that information to write sentences. Use *must, mustn't, must not, should,* or *shouldn't*.



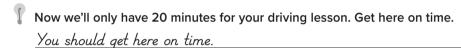
Mr. Day's English Class: Rules and Advice for Students

- Don't give me homework that is late.
 I won't take any late homework.
- Try to read something every night.
 Reading is fun, and it will help your vocabulary.
- Take my advice: Don't study just before tests.
 Try to study every day.
 This way you'll do better on your tests.
- Do NOT talk in class. This is an important rule.
- There will be three tests.
 You need to take all the tests.
 You can't miss a test.
- Sometimes the class might seem hard.
 Here's my advice: Don't worry; ask me for help.

1.	give / me your homework on time You
2.	read / every night You
3.	study / just before tests You
4.	study / every day You
5.	talk / in class You
6.	take / three tests You
7.	worry You

Talk about the law and give advice. Use *must, must not, should,* and *shouldn't*.





- **1.** You're driving recklessly and dangerously. Show some concern for other drivers and for me!
- **2.** You passed that car on the right. That's against the law.
- **3.** You are driving too fast. The speed limit is only 70 kilometers per hour here.
- Write sentences. Give three laws that a good driver must obey. Use *must* or *must not*.
- A good driver must not drive too fast.
 - 2
 - 3. _____
- Answer the question. Use **should** or **shouldn't**.

Question: What should a good driver do when there is a lot of traffic?

1. _____



مرارت التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

B Drive Slowly!

Read the descriptions of six different drivers. Complete each description with the appropriate adverb of manner. Use the adjectives in the box to form the adverbs of manner. Use each adjective one time.

	aggressive	dangerous	fast	hard	proper	reckless	slow
1		n angry man, and h d shouts. He drives				s; he blows his	horn;
		never drives over t	·	limit. He ofte	en drives unde	r it. He drives	
	2. Tariq never	drives under the s	peed limit	. He often dr	ives over it. He	e drives very	
	•	ds many hours wit		J		· ·	t three times.
		en a driver for just	a year, an	d he has alre	eady been in s	ix accidents. H	e caused

G Read the story. Rewrite the numbered sentences. Use adverbs of manner.

5. New drivers need to learn how to drive _____

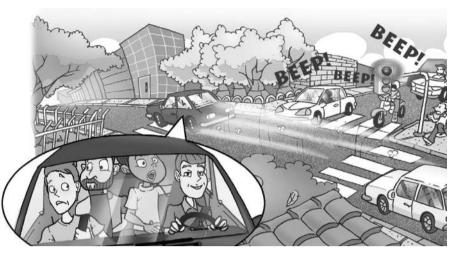
I'm a good driver. That is what I thought. But now I'm in a special class. (1) The students are here because they are dangerous drivers. So why am I a student here? (2) I'm here because I am a slow driver. My brother always told me this. (3) But he's a fast driver. So I never listened to him. But last week, a police officer told me this, too. And the police officer sent me to this special class. (4) I like to do everything the proper way. (5) So I am a hard worker in this class. (6) I've learned that driving slowly isn't the same thing as driving in a careful way. My brother laughed when he heard about this class. That's OK. I've learned a lot of things to tell him about his driving, too!

I drive u	vell.			
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				

H READING

Teenage Driving

"Colin, you just ran a red light!" Brad shouted from the back seat of the car. "Did I? Sorry! I didn't even see the red light." A few minutes later, Colin saw a stop sign—after he ran it. He was driving over the speed limit.



When they got to Mark's house, Colin called his mother. "Mom, we're at Mark's house. Everything is OK. I drove safely."

Teenage driving is sometimes a problem. In the United States, more teenagers die from accidents than from any other cause. There is a higher risk of accidents with 16-year-old drivers than with 17- and 18-year-old drivers. Also, when teens drive with other people in the car, they have accidents more often than when they're driving alone.

What is the reason for the teenage driving problem? Are teens reckless and dangerous drivers? Some people say teenagers are too young to drive. Other people don't agree. They say that the problem is just that teenagers are new drivers. They just need more practice and experience.

What is the solution to the problem? Some people think the solution is "graduated licensing." Here's what this means: A 16-year-old can get a license, but the license has limits that change over time. For example, at first the 16-year-old must drive with an adult. Then he can drive alone. The 16-year-old must not drive with other teenagers or must not drive at night. When the teenager has more experience, he can have a license with no limits. Some countries are trying graduated licensing, and it seems to be working well.

Answer the questions.

- 1. Why was Colin driving recklessly on the way to Mark's house?
- **2.** Which of these is **less** safe than the other—a car with a teenager driving alone or a car with a teenager driving with friends?
- **3.** What are two ideas that people have about why teenage driving is sometimes a problem?

4. What limits does a teenager with a graduated license have at first?

مرارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444





219

Unit 8

Things a Good Driving Instructor Should/Shouldn't Do
should be patient

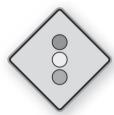
Т	Good lust/Mu	Instruc Do	tor















WRITING

Now write a paragraph that describes a good driving instructor.

What Makes a Good Driving Instructor?

What Makes a Good Driving Instructor?

(

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 220

Change each question to a tag question.
Do you live near the park?
You live near the park, don't you?
1. Did your brother go to the garage sale with you?
2. Have you been on vacation this year?
3. Doesn't your father speak French?
4. Are we going to go out for dinner this evening?
5. Did your brother get the job in Dammam?
6. Did you pass the test?
7. Hasn't she read that book?
Write a negative question for each answer.
Q : Isn't Fahd going to take the bus to school?
A: Yes, Fahd is going to take the bus to school.
1. Q:
A: Yes, I bought these tools at the garage sale on the weekend.
2. Q:
3. Q:
A: Yes, my sister is doing her homework right now.
4. Q:
A: Yes, he used the new vacuum cleaner.
5. Q: A: Yes, they have gone to the mountains on vacation.
6. Q:

puل حتاا قرازم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

EXPANSION Units 5–8

lb	rahim:	Our basketball team has lost all its games this year. We have three games left to play. The other basketball teams (1) win the games against our team.
M	ahmoud:	That's not a nice thing to say. You (2) talk like that. Our team is practice a lot. We are going to win. I know it!
Po	olice officer:	The law is very clear, sir. A driver (3) talk on the phone while he is driver to talk on the phone in the car.
Dı	river:	I'm sorry, officer. But I was sitting in a traffic jam. Cars weren't moving. I (4) get a ticket because I was just sitting—I wasn't driving.
Po	olice officer:	Again, the law is clear. You were in your car. You were the driver. And you were on your ph I (5) give you a ticket.
Ta	riq is a slow	wly.
Та	nriq is a slow ariq eats slo	eater. wly.
Ta <u>7a</u>	a riq is a slow Ariq eats slow Rashid is a	eater. wly.
1. 2.	riq is a slow Ariq eats slow Rashid is a My sister ar	eater. wly. loud talker.
1. 2. 3.	Rashid is a My sister ar	eater. wly. loud talker. nd brother are fast readers.
1. 2. 3.	Rashid is a My sister ar Khalid is a o	eater. buly. loud talker. and brother are fast readers. careful driver.

2229 **EXPANSION Units 5–8** 2022 - 1444

		e each group of words to write two sentences. Use the present perfect for one sentence d the simple past for the other sentence.
	Ba	dria / visit / the museum // last year Badria has visited the museum.
		Badria visited the museum last year.
	1.	Tariq and Saeed / eat / at the Indian restaurant // last Thursday night
	2.	we / go sightseeing / in Egypt // during our vacation in 2009
	3.	Ali / not take / chemistry with Mr. Faris // this past year
=	Wr	rite two sentences for each situation. Use the present perfect plus since and for .
		rite two sentences for each situation. Use the present perfect plus since and for .
		Itan started to exercise on September 5. Today is December 5.
		Itan started to exercise on September 5. Today is December 5.
	Sul	Itan started to exercise on September 5. Today is December 5. He has exercised since September.
	Sul	Itan started to exercise on September 5. Today is December 5. He has exercised since September. He has exercised for three months.
	Sul	Itan started to exercise on September 5. Today is December 5. He has exercised since September. He has exercised for three months.
	Sul	Itan started to exercise on September 5. Today is December 5. He has exercised since September. He has exercised for three months. Faisal drove his new car on Monday for the first time. Today is Friday.
	1. 2.	Itan started to exercise on September 5. Today is December 5. He has exercised since September. He has exercised for three months. Faisal drove his new car on Monday for the first time. Today is Friday.
	1. 2.	Itan started to exercise on September 5. Today is December 5. He has exercised since September. He has exercised for three months. Faisal drove his new car on Monday for the first time. Today is Friday. Noura and Amal studied French in seventh grade for the first time. They're now in tenth grade.

(

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education

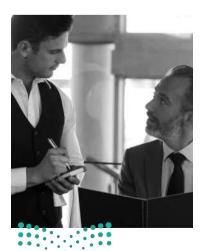
2022 - 1444

G	Vrite questions. Use How long .
T y	ou / play / video games
_	How long have you played video games?
1	• they / live / in Jeddah
2	she / be / on the phone
3	Qassim / work / at the hotel
4	Khalid / speak / Japanese
H	Complete the sentences. Use comparative or superlative adjectives.
1	The purple tie is \$22.00. The green tie is \$20.00. The red tie is \$18.00. The red tie is the (expensive) than the purple one. The purple tie is the (expensive).
2	The Italian restaurant usually has a line of people waiting outside to eat. It's very popular. There sometimes an empty table or two at the Indian restaurant, but it's usually crowded. There aren' usually many people in the French restaurant. It's never crowded, and the food isn't good. The Italian restaurant is the (popular). The French restaurant is always th (crowded). The Indian restaurant is (good than the French restaurant.
3	Ali's backpack weighs 4 kilograms. My backpack weighs 5 kilograms. It's really heavy! Fadi's backpack weighs 3 kilograms. My backpack is the (heavy) of all. Ali's backpack is (heavy) than Fadi's backpack. Fadi's backpack is (light) than my backpack.
I	Vrite sentences. Make comparisons with <i>asas</i> .
1 0	ell phone / chocolate bar / light
	A cell phone is as light as a chocolate bar.
1	• train / plane / not fast
2	ice cream / cake / good
3	water skiing / surfing / exciting
	

J	Make indirect questions. Use Do you know? or Could you tell me?		
	1.	How much does a subway ticket cost?	
	2.	What's the name of this bridge?	
	3.	Where's the best Indian restaurant?	
	4.	How many flights are there to Amman today?	
	5.	Where are my house keys?	

Look at each photo. Write a short conversation. Use indirect questions and comparative and superlative forms of adjectives (popular, fresh, good).





2. Customer: Waiter: Customer: _____ Waiter:

وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

EXPANSION Units 5–8 225

How were your last two vacations? Complete the chart.

	Location	Weather	Activities
Vacation 1			
Vacation 2			

M WRITING

Now write a paragraph and compare your last two vacations. Use the information from your chart.

		1
	My Last Two Vacations	
	- 19 Last 100 Vacations	
وزارة التع		
	N Units 5_8	
- 1444	N Units 5–8	
MBO_TEXT_2022.indb 2	26	13/4/22 6:4

9 All Kinds of People

Look at the photos. Complete the sentences. Use the words and expressions in the box.

pedal cab	taxi	thief	fake
steal	tourist	in a hurry	give directions

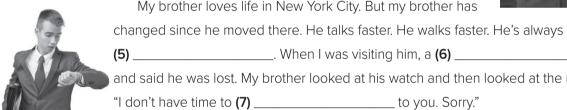
I visited my brother in New York City two weeks ago. We were walking downtown on a rainy day when I took this photo. Even in the rain, some people prefer to take a (1) ______ because it's more environmentallyfriendly and less expensive than a (2)



I was shopping at Manhattan mall when I saw a man

a shirt. I wasn't the only one who saw him do this. The security guard in the store saw him, too. Fortunately for the store, the man who tried to take the shirt without paying isn't a good





(5) ______ . When I was visiting him, a (6) _____ stopped us and said he was lost. My brother looked at his watch and then looked at the man. Then he said, "I don't have time to (7) ______ to you. Sorry."

Can you tell which of these watches is real? My brother can't. He was really late for a meeting the other day. At first, he didn't understand why. He looked at his watch and he actually should have been 15 minutes early, not a half hour late. Then he realized what was wrong. His watch wasn't working. He was mad, but not because he was late for the meeting. He was mad because his broken watch that cost \$300 was really a (8)





_____. I told him to buy his next watch in a store and not from a man on a street corner!

B Complete the definitions. Use the words in the box from **A**.

1. Someone who is late for school is going to be . .

2. A watch that looks like a well-known brand but costs a lot less is probably a _____

3. A person who steals things from others is a ______.

4. A person who is visiting a place on vacation is a ______

وزارة التعطو Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 9



- 1. Ali works in an office (who / which) is noisy and busy.
- 2. So yesterday he went to a park (who / that) is near his office to have lunch.
- 3. He sat down on a bench next to a man (who / which) was reading a book.
- **4.** A minute later, the man picked up a cell phone (who / that) was on the bench next to him and began making calls.
- 5. Two men (which / who) were sitting under a tree were having a quiet conversation.
- 6. Then some children (who / which) were playing near the men started to fight and shout.
- 7. Ali left the park thinking, "There is no place (who / that) is quiet and peaceful."
- 8. So he went back to his office (who / that) is not so different from the rest of the world.
- Imad's cousin from America is coming to visit Imad and his family. Combine each pair of sentences by putting the second sentence after the correct noun in the first sentence. Replace the underlined word(s) in the second sentence with **who, which,** or **that**.
 - **1.** My parents want me to be nice to Ahmed. He is my age.
 - **2.** They want me to take Ahmed to the football game. <u>The football game</u> is tomorrow night.
 - **3.** I don't want to take my cousin. He might not be a football fan.
 - **4.** This morning I heard voices. The voices were coming from the living room.
 - **5.** When I walked into the room, I saw Ahmed. He was wearing a football jersey.

6: I think that Ahmed is going to be fun to hang out with. Ahmed loves football.



All Kinds of People

Write two new sentences for each group of sentences. Use **who** in one sentence and which or that in the other sentence.

Brian likes adventure sports. He doesn't get nervous. Adventure sports take a lot of concentration. Brian, who doesn't get nervous, likes adventure sports.

Brian likes adventure sports that take a lot of concentration.





1. Vincent works as a security guard at a bank. Vincent is a very serious person. The bank has never been robbed.



2. My brother designed a new eco-friendly home. My brother is an architect. The home uses solar and wind power.



3. Omar passed the test. Omar always studies and is very smart. The test was about relative pronouns.

F	Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses	os. Uso the past progressive and the simple	nact
	Complete the sentences with the words in parentneses	es. Use the past progressive and the simple	pasi

1. The tourists _____ (eat) their lunch when a thief ____ (steal) their camera.

2. The thief ______ (run) when he _____ (drop) the camera.

3. The camera _____ (sit) on the ground when a boy _____ (pick it up).

4. The boy _____ (play) with the camera when the tourists suddenly _____ (notice) him. They got their camera back!

_____(take) a picture of him.

5. The boy _____ (eat) an ice cream cone that the tourists bought for him when they



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 9 229

On Thursday morning, Martin decided that he wanted to invite some friends over that night. He had to do many things at the same time. Write sentences about what he did. Use the pictures and his list.











change the lightbulb	have breakfast
make a list of things to do	clean house
make sandwiches	shop at the grocery store
talk on the phone	watch TV
think of what he needed to buy	make a cake

Ţ	H_{ϵ}	e was making a list of things to do while he was h	naving breaktast.
	1.		
Н		omplete the sentences. Use when or while .	
	1.	My brother was watching TV	he was eating dinner.
	2.	Ahmed was walking in the park	he saw Hameed.
	3.	Maha and Badria were studying for the math test	the phone rang.
	4.	Mom was cutting some vegetables for dinner	she cut her finger.
• •	5.	Dadwas drinking coffee he	was reading the newspaper.
• •	6.	They were surfing it started	to rain.
، التے	زارت	ig	
j of Edu	r di	on	

READING

WHAT SHOULD THEY DO?







Saeed is 35 years old. He has an important job with a computer company. He has a beautiful new house and many of the things that money can buy. But he is thinking about saying goodbye to a lot of that. He wants to leave this job to become a teacher. If he does, he'll have to go back to university to train to be a teacher. This will take up a lot of time and he will not earn money while he studies. He wants to help kids by being a teacher, but he also needs income to support his family. Should he leave his job?







Khalid, who is 18, has just graduated from high school. His parents want him to start university right away, but Khalid wants to start university next year. First, he wants to travel to different places around the world. His parents say that traveling will distract him and delay his studies. Khalid believes that traveling will be an exciting experience. It will make him more independent and confident, and it will also give him time to make responsible decisions about his future. What do you think?

To help people make decisions like these, you need to ask some questions:

- What kind of person is he? Is he a person who is lazy? Is he a person who is adventurous?
- What does he like to do? Does he like to do something that is exciting? Does he like to do something that is boring?
- What does he want to do? Does he want to do something that is important? Does he want to do something that is helpful?

Answer the questions.

- **1.** What job does Saeed have now?
- 2. What does Saeed want to be? Why?
- 3. Why don't Khalid's parents want him to travel for a year?

-4: Should Khalid go to university or travel for a year? Why?

وزارة التعطيم

Unit 9

231

9 All Kinds of People

Answer the questions. Use your own information.

Mhat do I I	ike to do? (school subjects, activities outside school, etc.)
1	
2	
	s are important to me? (environment, traveling, health, entertainment, etc.)
1	
	of november 12 /talketive energetic claver etal
	of person am I? (talkative, energetic, clever, etc.)
2	

K WRITING

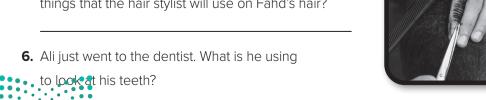
Now write a paragraph. Write about one of the jobs that would be good for you. Explain why this is a job that would be good for you.

	My Kind of Job	
	· ·	
- III		
- ارة الا المالة الاحتادة الاح		
	⊕	13/4/2

A Write the names of the items. **Dishes** Silky Hair



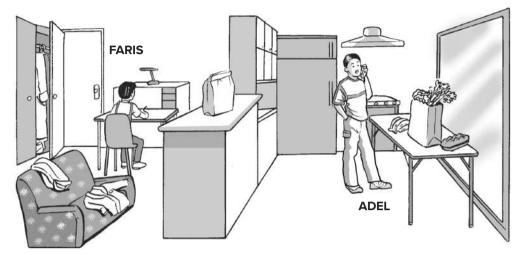
- 1. Imad used a toothbrush and water to brush his teeth. What else did Imad use?
- 2. What did the man use to wash Hussain's hair?
- **3.** The woman at the salon painted Amina's nails. What did she use?
- 4. It was my turn to wash the dishes. What did I put in the water to wash them?
- **5.** Fahd is getting his hair cut. What are some of the things that the hair stylist will use on Fahd's hair?



وزارة التعطيم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



Write questions and answers with the present perfect. Use the information in the picture. Use *already*, *yet*, or *just*.



Fa	ris / come home
Q:	Has Faris already come home?
	Yes, he's already come home.
	Adel / do the grocery shopping
	Q:
	A:
	Adel and Faris / put their jackets in the closet
	Q:
	A:
3.	Adel / answer the phone
	Q:
	A:
4.	Faris / start his homework
	Q:
	A:
5.	Adel / put the food from the supermarket away



SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 234



Complete the sentences about Ahmed. Use a verb from the box + the gerund form of the verb in parentheses.

enjoy	finish	keep	miss	
lt's my fir	st year at colleg	e, and I'm going	g to have a roomma	te. I know I'm going to
(1. live) with	n a roommate. It	will really be fu	n! I won't even	(2. have) my own room.
I haven't m	et my roommate	e yet, but I	(3. th	nink) that we're going to be great friends. I've
already <u> </u>		(4. clean) the i	room, and it looks n	ce and neat!

A week later:

avoid	keep	enjoy	hate	
l	(5. be	e) in a dirty room	, so I do the chore	es. But Jack, who is my roommate,
	(6. live) i	n one—he hasn	't done any chore	s yet. I try to talk to him about sharing cho
but he	(7	7. talk) to me. He	also	(8. use) my things
and doesn't	return them.			

Two months later:

keep	avoid	enjoy	can't stand	stop	
Help! I		_ (9. live) with Jac	ck anymore! He		(10. throw) his
clothes on the	e floor. And he	won't	(11. use) my	things. He sa	ys he'll stop, but then
he uses them	n again. I'm spe	ending a lot of tin	ne in the library, so I ca	ın	(12. go) back
to my room n	OW.				

Later that day:

just found out that Jack failed all his classes and won't be coming back to school. I realize that

راع. live) without a roommate—at least one like Jack!

2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 235

Rewrite the conversations. Change the position of the phrasal verbs.

Dad: Can you clean your room up?

Can you clean up your room?

1. Son: But I *did* clean my room up.

Dad: Really? It looks like you messed your room up.

2. Son: OK, Mom. I put the dishes away.

Mom: Are you sure you put away all the dishes?

Son: Oh, I didn't notice those plates in the dishwasher. I'll put the plates away now.



Complete each sentence. Use a two-word verb from the box and the correct pronoun.

clean up throw away hang up put away turn off take out

I used to save empty plastic bottles, but now I'm going to <u>throw them away</u>.

1. The trash can in the kitchen is full of garbage, so I'm going to _______.

2. I used to leave the light on in my bedroom when I wasn't there. Now I _____ when I leave my bedroom.

3. I used to leave the clean dishes in the dishwasher. Now I'm going to ______ after they're washed.

4. I have just ironed my clothes. I'm going to _______, so they don't get wrinkled.

5. The apartment is very dirty now, but I'm going to _____



G READING

Living with a College Roommate and Enjoying It

Many students go away to college and need accommodation. Apartments are often expensive. For students who have a tight budget, it can be a good idea to share an apartment. Money is not the only reason to have a roommate. Sharing an apartment can be fun.

But life with a roommate can also be a very bad experience. Some sociologists did a study of college students who shared a room. They found that students who had problems with their roommates were not happy at school and got sick more often than other students.



So how can you enjoy living with a roommate? Here is some advice:

- Being roommates with a friend can be hard. Friends who you see once in a while can be different
 when you live with them all the time. So before you decide to live with a friend, discuss the situation
 carefully.
- Before you decide to live with someone you don't know, talk to your potential roommate. Be honest about your habits and the things that irritate you.
- When you move in with a roommate, make rules. Decide how you will share the chores. Decide if you will share food. Is it OK to have guests? And what about making noise?
- Don't get angry at small things that your roommate does. Remember that no one—including you is perfect.

Answer the questions.

1.	What happened to the college students who had problems with their roommates?
2.	What should you do before you become roommates with a friend?
3.	What should you do before you become roommates with someone that you don't know?

••4. What are some things you and a roommate should make rules about?

صلحتاا قرازم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

H Complete the college roommate application with your own information.

College Roommate Application

- **1.** What do you enjoy doing?
- 2. What are some things that irritate you?
- 3. When do you go to bed? When do you get up?
- 4. What kind of food do you like? Do you like cooking?
- **5.** When do you usually study? Does noise bother you when you study?
- **6.** Do you usually leave your things all around or do you pick them up? How often do you clean your room up?
- **7.** Do you like your friends to visit you? Or do you prefer going out with your friends?
- 8. How much time do you spend talking on the phone?

■ WRITING

Now write a paragraph about what a roommate should know about you.

Things a Roommate Should Know About Me

238 Unit 10

وزارة الثع

11 Making Choices

A Complete each paragraph. Answer each question. Use the words in the box.

conservationist generate scenic group focus environment pass pollution fit in benefit

some small mountains where I live. I love the natural beauty here. There is this one very _______ place that is near my house. It has a river and a lot of green space. The local people like to go fishing and swimming in the river there. And many families even go on picnics there during the summer. It's really peaceful and a lot of fun. There's a lot of discussion about this place right now. Some people want to build a factory on the river. I don't understand how anyone would want to do that. I'm very worried about what is going to happen to the ______ the river, the animals, the trees. I have learned that the factory will probably create a lot of ______ in the area. People probably won't be able to swim or fish in the river anymore. And a lot of the trees will be cut down. I guess I'm a ______ because I don't want to see the area destroyed. Some people want the factory because they say that it will ______ jobs and more money for the area. They say that the factory is going to be a big ______ to everyone in our town. I don't agree.

Would you choose for the factory or against it?

2. Daniel is a very social person. He likes having friends and enjoys hanging out with them. He is intelligent, but sometimes he has too many things to do at one time. For example, next week he has extra football practice, he has to volunteer at the youth center, and he wants to hang out with his friends and go skiing. That is already a lot to do, but he also has a very important test in history. He needs to get a good grade on it. Daniel likes to _______ with his friends, so hanging out with them, wearing the right clothes, and playing sports are important. But getting into a good college is important, too, so he needs to ______ on studying more and getting better grades. He just can't do everything, but he thinks he can. He got a crazy idea—to create a study ______ for his history test. If he does that, he thinks that he'll be able to _____ it.

If Daniel tells his friends about his idea, what will they say?



Unit 11

239

11 Making Choices

ne	xt year. But if I don't spend	(spend) money on clothes, I w		
		ews. (sleep) in class, the teach until midnight, I		
	(not pass) the exam.	a		
2.		(rain) a lot this week, the ce, the team		
3.	·	below zero, rain		•
4.		(decide) on King Saud Ur		
5.		(tell) my parents that I did (be) angry. If I (be) angry, too!		
6.		(fall) t		
7.		(get) the job, he (move) to Dhahran, he p		
	friends and family very of		reservation now he	



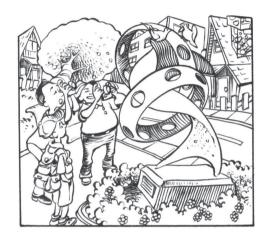
Write sentences about facts and possibilities. Use the information in the lists provided below.

The city is thinking about putting a modern sculpture in a square in the old part of town.



Facts

have to pay for the sculptureplant trees instead have a new place to sit



Possibilities

not like the modern piece of art be more beautiful than it is now not visit the square

The sculpture will be expensive. If the city puts a modern sculpture in the square, the city
will have to pay for the sculpture

1.	The garden club loves trees. If the city doesn't put a modern sculpture in the square, the garden club
2.	The square isn't very pretty right now, and some sculptures are really beautiful. If the city puts a modern sculpture in the square, the square
3.	The city wants more tourists to visit the square, but sculptures aren't really big tourist attractions. If the city puts a modern sculpture in the square, more tourists
4.	People have their own ideas about what good art is. If the city puts a modern sculpture in the square, some people
5.	There are a lot of birds in the square. If the city puts a modern sculpture in the square, the birds
Wri	ite sentences about situations in your life. Say what will/might happen.
lf _	I spend less time playing video games, I may do better in school
1. 2.	

Unit 11 241

میلحتا خ

2022 - 1444**4.** If

11 Making Choices

Answer the questions. Use *I'd rather*.

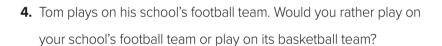
1

Derek is riding his bicycle by the lake. Would you rather go shopping at the mall or ride your bicycle by the lake?

I'd rather ride my bicycle by the lake than go shopping at the mall.

- **1.** Kevin is reading his favorite book in the park. Would you rather study math or read your favorite book in the park?
- **2.** David is camping in the mountains. Would you rather go camping in the mountains or stay in a hotel at the beach?





5. My brother and his friend went hiking in France last year. Would you rather go hiking across another country or take a train?

6. I have a little cousin who loves to go fishing. Would you rather go fishing or play video games?

7. That's my Uncle Bill. He went to the Grand Canyon in Arizona. Would you rather visit the Grand Canyon or visit New York City?















F READING

Who Influences Teens?

The teenage years are a time of life when people must make many important choices. Teenagers need to think about questions like these: Should I go to college? What kind of career do I want? Each person must make his or her own choices. But other people influence our choices. Who influences teens? Teens were asked this question, and here's what they said.

It depends on the kind of choice. When teens buy things, friends are the most important influence. This is especially true for clothes and electronic devices. Television shows, advertisements, and parents also influence teenagers. In more serious matters, parents are probably the most important influence. Some teens say it's best to have parents and friends as influences. One seventeen-year-old girl says, "Parents are able to tell us what's right and wrong because they have experience. And they always want what's best for us."

But teens also feel they need to make their own choices to make their own mistakes. As one teenage boy said, "If our parents don't let us make our own choices, maybe in the future we won't know how to." And they feel friends can often be a big help, especially because friends sometimes know more about their situation than their parents do. For example, one boy said his friends stopped him from making the wrong decision. He wanted to guit the basketball team because the coach wasn't nice to him. His friends kept saying, "You're a great player. The coach just wants you to try harder." Finally, he saw that they were right. "Thanks to the coach," he says, "I'm a better player than I used to be."



Complete the sentences. Use the information in the text.

1	 leenagers have to m 	ake decisions about college and their

- 2. Teenagers' _____ are the most important influence when they buy things.
- **3.** Teenagers often go to their parents for advice on ____
- **4.** Many teens think that it is a good idea to make decisions with the help of ____

5. To some teens, it is OK to sometimes _____ when they make decisions.

They learn this way.

وزارة التحليم Ministry of Education

2022 - 1444

Unit 11 243

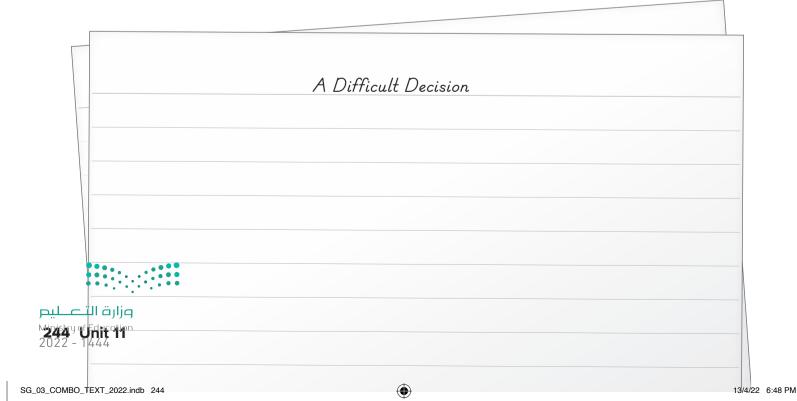
11 Making Choices

- **G** Read about these two situations.
 - 1. Your brother isn't doing well in his history class. You are very good at history. Your brother asks you to write his history report for him. In return, he promises to do all your chores for a month. You want your brother to do well in school. If you help him, he might get a better grade in history. And if he does your chores, you will have more free time this month. However, if you write his report for him, he won't learn anything. Should you write his report? Is there another solution?
 - 2. You are a writer for your school newspaper. You're working on an article about a local water pollution problem. You think that the pollution is from a factory that dumps chemicals into the river, but you aren't 100 percent sure. The pollution might not come from this factory. Some people ask you to write a story about how bad the situation is. What will you do?

Choose one situation. List some ideas for and against your choice.	

H WRITING

Now write a paragraph about your choice. Write what you will do and explain your choice.



12 Culture Shock

A Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box.

tip punctual comment graduate mud lawyer exchange remove



1. In many countries, people _____
their shoes before entering a home, so they don't bring
dust and ______ into the house.

Thank you for your card, Mr. Yoshida. I see that your cell phone number is on it.



- 2. In Japan, business people _____ cards, and it's polite to comment on the cards.
- 3. In the United States, it's not unusual to order a pizza on the phone and have it delivered to your house. And just like in a restaurant, it's polite to ______ the person who delivers the pizza to your house.
- **4.** In Germany, it's important to be ______ for business meetings. Being late or rushing makes a bad impression.
- **5.** In England, people often ______ about the weather while they're waiting in line for a bus.
- Armando Vasquez went to college in Mexico. It is customary to call him "Licenciado" because he is a university

 ______ and a ______.







It's warm weather today, isn't it?

Yes, it is. It's difficult to believe that it's still winter.

Hi. My name is Armando Vasquez, and I'm a lawyer.



2022 - 1444

13/4/22 6:48 PM

12 Culture Shock

Complete the paragraph with a verb + infinitive. Use the simple past of the verbs in the box and the infinitives in parentheses.

decide	expect	promise	manage	remember	-refuse
When I went	t to the United Sta	ates last summer or	n a business trip, n	ny 5-year-old daugl	nter and 7-year
son asked m	ne to take them. I	wasn't sure about t	the idea, so in the	beginning I	refused
to t	<u>take</u> (1 t	ake) them. But they	kept asking, and	they	
(2. take) then	m with me. I			(3. do) son	ne work on the
				airplane, hitting ead	
making a lot	t of noise. I wasn't	able to do any wo	rk, and I was very	angry with them. Th	ney really
		•	(4. upset) me. B	ut when they saw tl	nat I was upset
				od for the rest of the	
in England /	people / expect /	b + noun/pronoun · ' you / wait in line 1 ou to wait in line 1	or a bus		
in England / In England	' people / expect / d, people expect y	you / wait in line f	for a bus for a bus.	cards	
in England / In England 1. in Japan	/ people / expect / <u>d, people expect y</u> / business people	you / wait in line to ou to wait in line t	f or a bus For a bus. ad their business	cards	
in England / In England 1. in Japan 2. in the Un	/ people / expect y d, people expect y / business people	you / wait in line to wait in	for a bus. Sor a bus. ad their business tip after a meal	cards	
in England / In England 1. in Japan 2. in the Un 3. my parer	/ people / expect y d, people expect y / business people iited States / waite	you / wait in line to wait in line to wait in line to wait in line to e / expect / you / reers / expect / you / to	for a bus. ad their business tip after a meal fore dinner		
in England / In England 1. in Japan 2. in the Un 3. my parer 4. some bus	/ people / expect y d, people expect y / business people iited States / waite hts / never allow /	you / wait in line to wait in line to wait in line to wait in line to e / expect / you / reers / expect / you / to wait in line to wait in lin	for a bus. Sor a bus. ad their business tip after a meal fore dinner usiness in the Uni	ted States	

1 _	It's wrong to expect	(wrong / expect) people in another country to speak your language.
1.		(wrong / believe) that only your culture does things the "right" way.
		(important / read) about a place before you travel there.
		(a good idea / learn) a little of the language.
4.		(advisable / look) at what people from the country are doing and not doing.
5.		(rude / point) at people in any country.
6.		(not polite / refuse) an offer for coffee or tea from a business colleague
7.		— (a good idea / avoid) jokes that people in other cultures might not understand.
1.	Try not to	t people in another country to speak your language
1. 2. 3. 4.	Try not to Be sure to Try to Don't forget to	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1. 2. 3. 4. 5.	Try not to Be sure to Try to Don't forget to Try not to	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
1. 2. 3. 4. 5.	Try not to Be sure to Try to Don't forget to Try not to Try not to	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

•

<u> حتاا قهازم</u> Ministry of Education

2022 - 1444

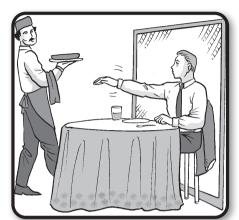
12 Culture Shock

common / have / problems when you travel It's common to have problems when you travel. 1. wrong / expect / the same customs in foreign countries 2. don't forget / watch out / for thieves 3. a good idea / hide / your money 4. remember / call / us every day so we know you're OK 5. try not / get lost / in the big cities 6. not rude / refuse / food that looks strange 7. make sure / pack / some medicine for stomach problems 8. important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you 9. be sure / have / great time 1. Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives. (1. go) to Spain as an exchange student in high school was one of my big dreams. I hoped	
 wrong / expect / the same customs in foreign countries don't forget / watch out / for thieves a good idea / hide / your money remember / call / us every day so we know you're OK try not / get lost / in the big cities not rude / refuse / food that looks strange make sure / pack / some medicine for stomach problems important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you be sure / have / great time Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives. (1. go) to Spain as an exchange student in high school was one of my big dreams. I hoped	
 don't forget / watch out / for thieves a good idea / hide / your money remember / call / us every day so we know you're OK try not / get lost / in the big cities not rude / refuse / food that looks strange make sure / pack / some medicine for stomach problems important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you be sure / have / great time Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives.	
 3. a good idea / hide / your money 4. remember / call / us every day so we know you're OK 5. try not / get lost / in the big cities 6. not rude / refuse / food that looks strange 7. make sure / pack / some medicine for stomach problems 8. important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you 9. be sure / have / great time Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives. 	
 4. remember / call / us every day so we know you're OK 5. try not / get lost / in the big cities 6. not rude / refuse / food that looks strange 7. make sure / pack / some medicine for stomach problems 8. important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you 9. be sure / have / great time Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives. (1. go) to Spain as an exchange student in high school was one of my big dreams. I hoped	
 5. try not / get lost / in the big cities 6. not rude / refuse / food that looks strange 7. make sure / pack / some medicine for stomach problems 8. important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you 9. be sure / have / great time Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives. (1. go) to Spain as an exchange student in high school was one of my big dreams. I hoped	
6. not rude / refuse / food that looks strange 7. make sure / pack / some medicine for stomach problems 8. important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you 9. be sure / have / great time Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives.	
7. make sure / pack / some medicine for stomach problems 8. important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you 9. be sure / have / great time Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives.	
8. important / take / your doctor's telephone number with you 9. be sure / have / great time Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives. (1. go) to Spain as an exchange student in high school was one of my big dreams. I hoped (2. learn) Spanish while I was there. But I learned much than Spanish. (3. live) in Spain gave me the chance to learn another culture. My parents took me to the airport, and I promised (4. send) emails every (5. fly) to Spain was a very exciting day for me. But after I arrived, I refuse	
Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives.	
Complete Michael's story. Use gerunds and infinitives.	
(1. go) to Spain as an exchange student in high school was one of my big dreams. I hoped(2. learn) Spanish while I was there. But I learned much than Spanish(3. live) in Spain gave me the chance to learn another cultum My parents took me to the airport, and I promised(4. send) emails every(5. fly) to Spain was a very exciting day for me. But after I arrived, I refuse	
My parents took me to the airport, and I promised (4. send) emails every (5. fly) to Spain was a very exciting day for me. But after I arrived, I refuse	more
(C. Write) to my parents for several weeks. Failant write because I was so	y day. ed
unhappy. Nothing was the way I expected it	at home in Spai , I mear
Spanish. I even pretended not(11. understand) what people were saying the a still ent who was my age invited me to the beach and introduced me to a lot of his friends:	j to me.



READING

Learn to Speak the Language



When you go to another country, you should learn to speak the language. This isn't something you can do with just a dictionary and a grammar book. Allow me to explain.

Words don't always have their literal meaning. When I went to Japan for the first time, I knew that the Japanese word for "yes" is hai. I went to discuss an important business issue. At the end of the meeting, I summarized my plan and asked my Japanese colleague, "Do you agree?" He answered with hai. That night I called my boss and told him that the Japanese company was ready to go ahead with the plan. The next day I had to tell my boss that this wasn't true. It turns out that the Japanese often use hai to mean "I've heard you. I understand."

Gestures are worse than words. They often have a meaning that is very different from the meaning you know. When I was in China, I saw people waving their hands at other people. They waved their hands the way I do when I want to tell someone to go away. But every time a Chinese person did this, the other person came nearer. Finally, a Chinese friend explained that this was the gesture for "come here."

This experience didn't prepare me for the taxi in Bulgaria. When my plane arrived in Sofia, I was tired. So I was happy that a taxi was right there. "OK?" I asked, opening the door. The taxi driver moved his head up and down, so I jumped in. "Downtown, please. OK?" I said. The taxi driver nodded again, but nothing happened. Finally, I became angry and jumped out. Guess what? In Bulgaria moving your head up and down means "no" and shaking your head from side to side means "yes."



Write **T** for **True** and **F** for **False**.

- **1.** _____ Words sometimes have more than one meaning.
- 2. ____ In Japanese, hai always means "yes."
- **3.** _____ Waving one's hand in China means "come here."
- 4. _____ In Bulgaria, nodding the head up and down means "no."
- **5.** _____ Shaking the head from side to side in Bulgaria means "I don't understand."



Ministry of Education 2022 – 1444

13/4/22 6:48 PM

12 Culture Shock

What things are unique to your culture? Complete the chart with your ideas.

What actions are considered polite in your culture?	
2. What is the food like in your culture? What are typical dishes or ingredients?	
3. What gestures do people make with their hands or head or eyes? What do the different gestures mean?	
4. What pastimes are part of your culture?	
5. What words or expressions make up part of your culture?	

K WRITING

Imagine you are having an exchange student from another culture stay with you. This student has never been to your country. Write a paragraph about things that are unique to your culture. Use some of your ideas from the chart above.



A	Combine the sentences. Use <i>who</i> or <i>which</i> .						
1	I live in an apartment. The apartment is small. I live in an apartment which is small.						
	1. I have three good friends. They are in my class at school.						
	2.	We have modern furniture. It is elegant and comfortable.					
	3.	Last night I went to a restaurant. The restaurant serves Italian food.					
	4.	Have you been to the new shopping mall? The mall opened last week.					
	5.	We're going to visit my grandparents. My grandparents live in the countryside.					
В	Со	mbine the sentences. Use the simple past and the past progressive. Use when or while .					
1		the bus to the doctor's office. I was reading a book while I rode the bus to the doctor's office.					
	1.	I get off the bus. The paper with the doctor's address falls from my pocket.					
	2.	A strong wind blows the paper quickly down the street. I run after it.					
	3.	I wait at the corner at a stop light. A carruns over the paper.					

(

صيلحتا قرازم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



Look at each image. Write about what just happened. Use the simple past and the past progressive. Use when or while.



1. What just happened to Abdullah?



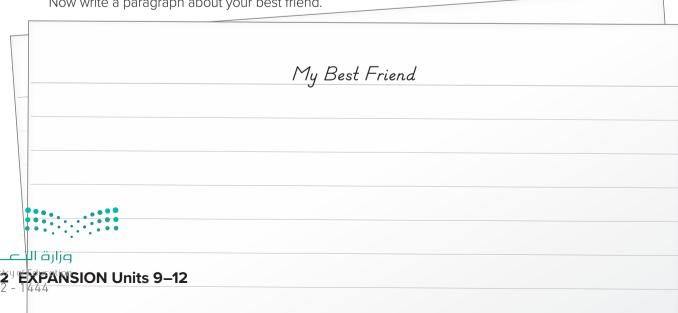
2. What just happened to Paul?

Who is your best friend? How long have you known your friend? Complete the chart below about your friend's personality.

Personality	Example
funny	always makes me laugh

E WRITING

Now write a paragraph about your best friend.



SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 252

F	Complete the conditional sentences with your own ideas. Use <i>may</i> or <i>might</i> , the future, or the simple present.				
		If I study a lot,			
		If I go to college,			
	3.	If I don't have much time to see my friends,			
		If the temperature outside is zero degrees,			
	5.	If it rains a lot,			
	6.	If I don't do my homework,			
	7.	If I work all the time,			
	8.	If the sun sets,			
	9.	If my family eats dinner in a restaurant,			
	10.	If I go to the beach,			
	eat	steak and chicken all the time / be a vegetarian d rather be a vegetarian than eat steak and chicken all the time. read a book / watch TV hang out with your friends / surf the Internet			
	3. \	work a lot and be tired all the time / work less and enjoy my free time			
	4.	buy a new camera / save my money			
	5. 1	travel and make new friends / stay home and work			
	6. :	study and pass a test / not study and fail a test			
	7.	ive to a big city / live in a small town			



وزارة التعطيم

Complete the email. Use gerunds or infinitives of the verbs in parentheses.

0 • •	oxtimes	
Reply Reply to all	rward Delete Print	•
To: ali_fa@supergoal.com Subject: Enjoying England		
Hi Ali,		
, ,	igland on a language course was su	, , ,
, , ,	ew people. In fact, I don't want	(3. leave), so I've
decided(4.	stay) here for the summer.	
I never expected	(5. like) it here so much. At firs	t, I missed
(6. hang out) with my friends, and	I avoided(7. ta	alk) to others because I thought
	ay, a few classmates invited me	
	greed to go because I couldn't stand	
	(10. go out) was a lot of fun	
(11. laugh). I	didn't even mind	(12. speak) in English.
,	(13. make) new friend English much more confidently. I pro	
(15. write) again soon.	-	
Take care,		
Saeed		
		///

Complete the conversations.

1.	Maha:	It's	_ say "please" and "thank you."
	Badria:	And	say "you're welcome," too.
2.	Noura:	lt's	_ talk while someone else is talking.
	Sabah:	So	_ listen while someone is talking to you.
3.	Yahya:	It's	_ miss your family and friends when you go away to college.
	Majid:	But	_ make new friends as soon as you can.
4.	Saeed:	It's	_ bring some food and water on a long hike.
		ta	
5 .	Fadwa:	lt's	take something from a store without paying for it.
• •	Aisha:	Câ	all the police if you see someone do this.

254 EXPANSION Units 9–12 2022 - 1444

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 255

3				
	-	h culture shock? Complete the c mon cultural differences.	chart with ideas	
		 Customs / Traditions respect local customs learn about traditions 		
Cui	sine	Culture Shock	Language	
		Gestures		
L WRITING				
Now write a pai	ragraph with adv	vice on how to deal with culture	shock.	
	Ног	w to Deal with Culture S	Shock	

Unit 1 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 1:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 1:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 1:

Unit 1 Checklist	l can do this very well.	l can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about lifestyles			
talk about habits and routines			
talk about frequency of actions			
use the simple present tense for habitual activities			
use adverbs and expressions of frequency			
ask questions with how often, how much, and how long			
use all, both, neither, and none			

My five favorite new words from Unit 1:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 1:		
	 read through the unit again listen to the audio material study the grammar and functions from the unit again ask your teacher for help 		



Unit 2 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 2:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 2:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 2:

Unit 2 Checklist	l can do this very well.	l can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about past actions			
relate past events in my life			
report what people said			
use the simple past tense in <i>yes/no</i> questions and short answers and in information questions			
use the expression be + born			
use expressions with the passive			
use <i>used to</i> in the affirmative and negative and in questions			
use time expressions for the past			

My five favorite new words from Unit 2:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 2:
ارة التعليم ا	 read through the unit again listen to the audio material study the grammar and functions from the unit again ask your teacher for help

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 257 13/4/22 6:48 PM

2022 - 1444

Unit 3 Self Reflection

	Things that I liked about Unit 3:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_		

Things that I found easy in Unit 3:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 3:		

Unit 3 Checklist	l can do this very well.	l can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about air travel			
talk about ongoing actions			
talk about plans and future actions			
use the present progressive			
use the future with <i>going to</i> and <i>will</i>			
use infinitives of purpose			
use time clauses with after, as soon as, before, etc.			
use prepositions of movement			

My five favorite new words from Unit 3:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 3:
	 read through the unit again listen to the audio material study the grammar and functions from the unit again ask your teacher for help
Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444	



Unit 4 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 4:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 4:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 4:

Unit 4 Checklist	I can do this very well.	l can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about foods, buying foods, and planning meals			
describe quantities			
put events in sequence			
give and follow directions			
use the expressions of quantity a few, a little, a lot of, much, many, and enough			
use the pronouns something, anything, and nothing			
use the sequence words first, then, after that, and finally			
use reflexive pronouns			
use the conjunctions because and so			

My five favorite new words from Unit 4:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 4:
ارة التارية ا	 read through the unit again listen to the audio material study the grammar and functions from the unit again ask your teacher for help
2022 - 1444	

Unit 5 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Un	it 5:	Things that I didn't like very much:	

Things that I found easy in Unit 5:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 5:

Unit 5 Checklist	l can do this very well.	l can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about inventions			
express actions that have happened recently			
express actions that began in the past and continue into the present			
use the present perfect tense versus the simple past			
use the present perfect with <i>for</i> and <i>since</i> in the affirmative and negative			
use questions with how long			
use the passive in simple present, present perfect, and simple past			

My five favorite new words from Unit 5:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 5:
	read through the unit againlisten to the audio material
	study the grammar and functions from the unit again
ارة الرقالية المسلمين المسلمي المسلمين المسلمين ال	ask your teacher for help

M**260**y of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 6 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 6:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 6:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 6:

Unit 6 Checklist	l can do this very well.	l can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about quality of life			
describe features of places			
make comparisons			
ask for information			
use the comparative and superlative forms of adjectives			
use comparisons with asas			
ask indirect questions			
use the definite article the			

My five favorite new words from Unit 6:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 6:
	read through the unit againlisten to the audio material
	 study the grammar and functions from the unit again
مرا رة الت عليم	• ask your teacher for help

Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Unit 7 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 7:	Things that I didn't like very much:
Things that I found easy in Unit 7:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 7:

Unit 7 Checklist	l can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about common items at a garage sale			
confirm information			
describe abilities			
use tag questions in the affirmative and negative			
ask negative questions			
use the expression be able to			
use should, can, could, why don't, and let's for suggestions			

My five favorite new words from Unit 7:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 7:
	 read through the unit again listen to the audio material study the grammar and functions from the unit again ask your teacher for help

مرارة التعليم Ministry of Education 202**2262**444

Unit 8 Self Reflection

	Things that I liked about Unit 8:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_		

Things that I found easy in Unit 8:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 8:

Unit 8 Checklist	l can do this very well.	l can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about cars, driving, and traffic signs			
give advice			
express obligation			
say how people do things			
use the modal auxiliaries <i>must/mustn't/must not</i> and <i>should/shouldn't</i>			
use adverbs of manner			
use can, could, will, and would for requests			
report commands and requests			

My five favorite new words from Unit 8:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 8:
	read through the unit againlisten to the audio material
	 study the grammar and functions from the unit again
مار حتا قرازم Ministry of Education	ask your teacher for help

2022 - 1444 **263**

SG_03_COMBO_TEXT_2022.indb 263

Unit 9 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 9:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 9:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 9:

Unit 9 Checklist	l can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
talk about past events that are interrupted			
describe people's personalities and character			
use the relative pronouns who, that, and which			
use the past progressive with when and while			
ask for permission with can, may, and could			

My five favorite new words from Unit 9:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 9:
	 read through the unit again listen to the audio material study the grammar and functions from the unit again ask your teacher for help



Unit 10 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 10:	Things that I didn't like very much:

Things that I found easy in Unit 10:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 10:

Unit 10 Checklist	l can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
describe problems			
talk about common complaints			
express actions that have happened recently			
use the present perfect with <i>already, yet,</i> and <i>just</i> in questions and answers			
use the construction verb + gerund			
use two-word verbs			
use can't and must for speculation			
use sothat and suchthat			

My five favorite new words from Unit 10:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 10:
	 read through the unit again listen to the audio material study the grammar and functions from the unit again ask your teacher for help

مرارة التعليم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444



Unit 11 Self Reflection

	Things that I liked about Unit 11:	Things that I didn't like very much:
_		
_		
	Things that I found easy in Unit 11:	Things that I found difficult in Unit 11:

Unit 11 Checklist	l can do this very well.	I can do this quite well.	I need to study/ practice more.
express cause and effect			
make choices			
express preferences			
use the conditional with present and future forms			
use the expression I'd rather			
use the conditional for imaginary situations			
express present wishes			

My five favorite new words from Unit 11:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 11:
	• read through the unit again
	 listen to the audio material
	 study the grammar and functions from the unit again
	• ask your teacher for help

مرارت التعليم Ministry of Education 202**266**:44

Unit 12 Self Reflection

Things that I liked about Unit 12:	Things	that I didn't like ve	ery much:
Things that I found easy in Unit 12:	Things	that I found difficu	ılt in Unit 12:
	I can do this	I can do this	I need to study/
Unit 12 Checklist	very well.	quite well.	practice more.
describe customs of different cultures			
give advice			
use the construction verb + infinitive			
use the construction verb + noun/pronoun + infinitive			
use the construction it's + infinitive			
use expressions of advice with infinitives			
use gerunds as subjects			
use the past perfect			

My five favorite new words from Unit 12:	If you're still not sure about something from Unit 12:
	 read through the unit again listen to the audio material study the grammar and functions from the unit again ask your teacher for help

مرارة التعليم Ministry of Education 2022 - 1444

Photo Credits

SB: iii (t)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, 2 (t))@sirtravelalot/Shutterstock, (tc)@makasana photo/Shutterstock, (tr)@Meelena/Shutterstock, (cl)@ Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock, (cr)@Feyyaz Alacam/Shutterstock, (br)@Photographee.eu/Shutterstock; 3 (ti)@Marwen khatmi/Shutterstock, (tr)@Nako Photography/Shutterstock; 5 (tr)@pio3/ Shutterstock, (1)@Ingram Publishing, (2)@Friends Stock/Shutterstock, (3)@lightpooet/Shutterstock, (4)@Hi Brow Arabia/ Alamy Stock Photo, (5)@Africa Studio/Shutterstock, (6)@Levent Konuk/Shutterstock; 6 (cr)@fotoinfot/Shutterstock; 8 (tr)@Antonio Guillem/Shutterstock; 9 (tr)@Sam Edwards/Glow Images, (br)@gulf eye/Shutterstock; 010 (br)@phive/Shutterstock; 12 (cl)@ McGraw-Hill Education, (br)@Artur Didyk/Shutterstock, (bkgd)@Picsfive/Shutterstock; 13 (tr)@Raul Mellado Ortiz/ Shutterstock, (cl)@Jon Schulte/Shutterstock, (bkgd)@Picsfive/Shutterstock; 14 (br)@jocic/Shutterstock; 015 (tr)@Littlekidmoment/Shutterstock, (cl)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (cr)@zhu_zhu/123RF, (1)@ Robert Daly/age fotostock, (2)@JUPITERIMAGES/BananaStock/Alamy, (3)@Little_Desire/Shutterstock, (4)@Tetyana Kokhanets/Shutterstock, (5)©Zurijeta/Shutterstock, (6)©Hi Brow Arabia/Alamy Stock Photo; 16 (tr)©Universal History Archive/UIG/Shutterstock; 18 (tl)@Witt/Sipa/Shutterstock, (cl)@Mosa'Ab Elshamy/AP/Shutterstock, (br)@adznano3/Shutterstock; 19 (tr)@Shutterstock; 21 (cl)©adznano3/Shutterstock, (cr)©kv naushad/Shutterstock, (br)©Rawpixel.com/Shutterstock; 26 (l-r, t-b)©S.Borisov/ Shutterstock, (2)@Sorbis/Shutterstock, (3)@Ljupco Smokovski/Shutterstock, (4)@McGraw-Hill Education, (5)@carpe89/ Shutterstock, (6)@McGraw-Hill Education, (7)@Nadezda Murmakova/Shutterstock, (8)@lendy16/Shutterstock; 27 (tr)@ESB Professional/Shutterstock, (cl)@Mahmoud Farahat/Shutterstock, (cr)@pio3/Shutterstock; 28 (t)@Hyserb/Shutterstock, (cI)©Ahmed Hamdy Hassan/Shutterstock, (cr)©Mohammed Kamaludheen/Shutterstock, (b)©H1N1/Shutterstock; 32 Heath Doman/Shutterstock, Alex Staroseltsev/Shutterstock, Hal_P/Shutterstock, Elena Schweitzer/Shutterstock, PaulPaladin/ Shutterstock, Anton Starikov/Shutterstock, Gelpi/Shutterstock, JIANG HONGYAN/Shutterstock, Constant/Shutterstock, Danny Smythe/Shutterstock, Sandra Caldwell/Shutterstock, Andrjuss/Shutterstock, Diana Jo Marmont/Shutterstock, DronG/ Shutterstock, Tatiana Popova/Shutterstock, Shebeko/Shutterstock, Rafa Irusta/Shutterstock, Norman Chan/Shutterstock, Cameramannz/Shutterstock, italianestro/Shutterstock, Anita Patterson Peppers/Shutterstock, Semjonow Juri/Shutterstock, Nataliya Sdobnikova/Shutterstock, Kulyk/Shutterstock, Inc/Shutterstock, Eric Gevaert/Shutterstock, Elena Schweitzer/ Shutterstock; 33 (tl)@Brilliant-Tariq Al Nahdi/Shutterstock, (cl)@Ana Blazic Pavlovic/Shutterstock, (cr)@Stanislav71/Shutterstock; 35 (tr)©Karen Appleyard/Alamy Stock Photo; 36 (1)©Ingram Publishing/SuperStock, (2)©magone/123RF, (3)©Zigzag Mountain Art/Shutterstock, (4)©Tetra Images/Alamy Stock Photo, (5)©ChameleonsEye/Shutterstock, (6)©Praisaeng/Shutterstock; 37 (1)©Andrew Bret Wallis/BananaStock/Getty Images, (2)©Purestock/SuperStock, (3)©Paul Cowan/Shutterstock, (4)©Diego Samy/Shutterstock; **38** (cl)©oleksiy/123RF, (cr)©lan 2010/Shutterstock, (b)©mama_mia/Shutterstock, (bkgd)©lewalp/ Shutterstock; 39 (tr)@Joe Gough/Shutterstock, (c)@Iconotec/Glowimages, (br)@vitals/Shutterstock; 42 (b)@Popova Valeriya/ Shutterstock; 43 (t) © Eric Isselee/Shutterstock, (tc) © inxti/Shutterstock; 44 (tr) © Andrey Myagkov/Shutterstock, (cl) © showcake/ Shutterstock, (br)©panco971/Shutterstock; **45** (tr)©Amy Nichole Harris/Shutterstock, (c)©Vladimir Mulder/Shutterstock, (cr)@astudio/Shutterstock, (br)@NT_pong/Shutterstock; 46 (tr)@wowow/Shutterstock, (cl)@javarman/Shutterstock, (cr)@Jill Lang/Shutterstock, (cr)@szefei/Shutterstock, (bl)@Dejan Lazarevic/Shutterstock, (br)@basel101658/Shutterstock; 47 (tr)@Julien Tromeur/Shutterstock, (br)@Borisoff/Shutterstock; 48 Everett Historical/Shutterstock, Rashevskyi Viacheslav/Shutterstock, Dja65/Shutterstock, tankist276/Shutterstock, Ingram Publishing/SuperStock, ZynatiszJay/Shutterstock, George Doyle/ SuperStock, Sergey Ryzhov/Alamy Stock Photo; 49 arogant/Shutterstock, Hurst Photo/Shutterstock, Roman Vukolóv/ Shutterstock, studioZEVS/Shutterstock; 51 (1)@Somchai Som/Shutterstock, (2)@dcb/Shutterstock, (3)@Volodymyr Krasyuk/ Shutterstock, (4)@Vvoe/Shutterstock, (5)@New Africa/Shutterstock, (6)@domnitsky/Shutterstock, (7)@photo one/Shutterstock; 52 (tr)@ Image Source, all rights reserved., (br)@ApoGapo/Shutterstock; 54 (tr)@meunierd/Shutterstock, (bl)@Algol/ Shutterstock; 55 (tr)@Wayo/Shutterstock, (cr)@Jomic/Shutterstock; 56 (br)@Suradech Prapairat/Shutterstock; 57 (cr)@Andrey Lobachev/Shutterstock, (br)@maxpro/Shutterstock; **58** (tl)@Rob Tilley/Spaces Images/Blend Images, (cr)@EarnestTse/ Shutterstock, (bl)@Konstanttin/Shutterstock; 59 (tl)@eskystudio/Shutterstock; 60 (tl)@Petr Student/Shutterstock, (tc)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (tr)@Dejan Milinkovic/Shutterstock; 61 (br)@krsmanovic/Shutterstock; 64 (tr)@Sophie James/ Shutterstock; 65 (tl)@urosr/Shutterstock, (tr)@Mohammed Kamaludheen/Shutterstock; 66 (l)@Digital Archive Japan/Alamy Stock Photo; 67 (tr)@kv naushad/Shutterstock; 070 (cr)@igorad1/Shutterstock, (bl)@chaoss/Shutterstock, (bcl)@Le Do/ Shutterstock, (bcr)@Ljupco Smokovski/Shutterstock, (br)@Vtls/Shutterstock; 72 (tr)@Mikhail Nekrasov/Shutterstock, (c)@Dja65/ Shutterstock, (b)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; 73 (tr)@Friends Stock/Shutterstock; 74 (tl)@karen roach/Shutterstock, (tr)@Altrendo Images/Shutterstock; 75 (tr)@Lorelyn Medina/Shutterstock, (b)@Linda Parton/Shutterstock; 76 (c)@Ryan Kelm/ Shutterstock, 77 (c)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; 79 (I)©Ahmad Ihsan/Shutterstock, (I)©andrzej80/Shutterstock, (2) © Zoart Studio/Shutterstock, (3) © Cherkas/Shutterstock, (4) © Cherkas/Shutterstock, (5) © Jojoo 64/Shutterstock, (6) © Jojoo 64/Shutterstock, (6) © Jojoo 64/Shutterstock, (7) © Jojoo 64/Shutterstock, (8) © Jojoo 64 Shutterstock, (7)©Fejas/Shutterstock, (8)©Fejas/Shutterstock; **81** (1)©Jason Kasumovic/Shutterstock, (2)©Sue Smith/ Shutterstock, (3)@Valeriy Poltorak/Shutterstock, (4)@karen roach/Shutterstock, (5)@Craicpot/Shutterstock, (6)@Shane White/ Shutterstock, (7)©Kurt Vansteelant/Shutterstock; **82** (tr)©Zurijeta/Shutterstock, (cr)©Syda Productions/Shutterstock; **84** (tr)@Askolds Berovskis/Shutterstock; 85 (tr)@Kamira/Shutterstock;87 (tr)@Fejas/Shutterstock; 89 (1)@n1kcy/123RF, (2) @emerald_media/Shutterstock, (3) @vchal/Shutterstock, (4) @lmage Source/Javier Perini CM, (5) @Shutterstock/zefart, (6)©Glen Allison/Getty Images; 90 (tl)©Mauricio Graiki/Shutterstock, (tr)©lassedesignen/Shutterstock, (b)©Peppy Graphics/ Shutterstock; 91 (tl)@ViktorKozlov/Shutterstock, (cl)@Image Source/Javier Perini CM, (cr)@Ljupco Smokovski/123RF; 101 (c)@Shutterstock/lev radin; 102 (tr)@Zurijeta/Shutterstock, (c)@Digital Archive Japan/Alamy Stock Photo; 107 (I-r, t-b)@Elnur/ Shutterstock, (2)©Katrina Brown/Shutterstock, (3)©zeljkodan/Shutterstock, (4)©Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (5)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (6)@Brilliant-Tariq Al Nahdi/Shutterstock; 108 (tr)@Moatassem/Shutterstock, (br)@Ebtikar/Shutterstock; 112 (tr)@Crystal Eye Studio/Shutterstock; 114 (tr)@R McKown/Shutterstock, (cl)@FotoAndalucia/ Shutterstock, (cr)@Suzanne Tucker/Shutterstock, (bl)@schusterbauer.com/Shutterstock; 115 (tr)@Nesrudheen Matathoor/ Shutterstock, (cl)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (cr)@Fabio Lamanna/Shutterstock; 118 (tr)@John Grummitt/ Shutterstock, (c) kv naushad/Shutterstock; 119 (tr) an Cramman/Shutterstock; 120 (cr) Christos Georghiou/Shutterstock; 121 (tr) Sean Nell Shutterstock; **123** (cr) Joeri Mostmans/Shutterstock; **127** (I-r, t-b) Sophia_Kluge/Shutterstock, (2) Tatweer Co.

مرارت التعليم M**268**y of Education 2022 - 1444

(�)

Photo Credits

for Educational Services, (3)©Friends Stock/Shutterstock, (4)©Prostock-studio/Shutterstock, (5)©fizkes/Shutterstock; 128 (cr)@ClassicVector/Shutterstock; 129 (tr)@dibrova/Shutterstock; 130 (t)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services: 131 (tr)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (br)@kkoman/Shutterstock; 133 (tr)@Moatassem/Shutterstock, (bl)@Hung Chung Chih/Shutterstock; 134 (br)@Black Kings/Shutterstock; 136 (br)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; 137 (tr)@bbernard/ Shutterstock, (1) Steffen Foerster/Shutterstock, (2) John Alex Fraser/Shutterstock, (3) Di Studio/Shutterstock, (4)@diplomedia/Shutterstock; 139 (br)@dizain/Shutterstock; 140 (bl)@John Grummitt/Shutterstock; 141 (tr)@Kdonmuang/ Shutterstock, (br)@smolaw/Shutterstock, (bkgd)@Pandapaw/Shutterstock; 143 (br)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; 144 (tr)@gulf eye/Shutterstock, (c)@Ahmed Hamdy Hassan/Shutterstock, (br)@MUHAMMAD FARID/Shutterstock; 145 (tr) © Sophie James/Shutterstock, (I-r, t-b) © J. Helgason/Shutterstock, (2) © victoria Kh/Shutterstock, (3) © Chay/Shutterstock, (4) © Boris Vian/Shutterstock.

WB: 167 (1) Antoniodiaz/Shutterstock, (2) GaudiLab/Shutterstock, (3) Vadim Guzhva/123RF, (4) Dean Drobot/ Shutterstock; 168 (tl)@Sam Edwards/Glow Images, (1)@andreypopov/123RF, (2)@Sony Herdiana/Shutterstock, (3)@T-Design/ Shutterstock, 172 (tl)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (tcl)@LADO/Shutterstock, (tcr)@Theartofphoto/123RF, (tr)@Image Source/Getty Images; 173 (tr)@Goodreason/Shutterstock, (cl)@AFM Visuals/Shutterstock, (cl)@Keith Brofsky/Getty Images, (br)©Patryk Kosmider/Shutterstock; 176 (tl)©mike mols/Shutterstock; 177 (tr)©Ken Welsh/Pixtal/AGE Fotostock, (br)©Frederic Legrand - COMEO/Shutterstock; 178 (tr)©Robert Daly/Caia Image/Glow Images; 179 (t)©Image Source, (c)©Tyler Olson/ Shutterstock, (b)@Roman Kosolapov/Shutterstock; 182 (tl)@Glow Images, (1)@Ustyujanin//Shutterstock, (2)@Hero Images/ Image Source, (3)@Chubykin Arkady/Shutterstock, (4)@Chris Van Lennep/Alamy Stock Photo, (5)@Robert Marmion/Alamy Stock Photo; 183 (tr)@Library of Congress Prints and Photographs Division; 185 (1)@DronG/Shutterstock, (2)@JIANG HONGYAN/Shutterstock, (3) Valentina Razumova/Shutterstock, (4) Valentina Proskurina/Shutterstock, (5) mexrix/ Shutterstock, (6)@oksana2010/Shutterstock, (7)@Nattika/Shutterstock, (8)@Pixfiction/Shutterstock, (9)@azure1/Shutterstock, (10) ©Balogh Tamas/Shutterstock; **187** (tr) © AlexeiLogvinovich/Shutterstock, (br) © Andrey_Popov/Shutterstock; **188** (1)©Maks Narodenko/Shutterstock, (2)©Valentyn Volkov/Shutterstock, (3)©Kyselova Inna/Shutterstock, (4)©Valery121283/ Shutterstock; 189 (tcl)@mediamasmedia/Shutterstock, (tr)@VicPhotoria/Shutterstock; 190 (t)@Emma Innocenti/Image Source, (c)@Blend Images/Image Source, (r)@svario photo/Shutterstock; 194 (tr)@Ljupco Smokovski/LJSphotography/Alamy Stock Photo; 196 (b) Denise Kappa/Shutterstock; 197 (1) McGraw-Hill Education, (2) Tetra Images, LLC/Alamy Stock Photo, (3)@stockfour/Shutterstock, (4)@Roman Vukolov/Shutterstock, (5)@Oleh Poliarush/123RF, (6)@Oleksandr_Delyk/Shutterstock, (7)©tankist276/Shutterstock, (8)©Vukasin Antanaskovic/Shutterstock; 199 (1)© Paul Bradbury/age fotostock, (2)©Sergey Furtaev/Shutterstock, (3)@Purestock/SuperStock, (4)@BravissimoS/Shutterstock, (5)@goofyfoottaka/Shutterstock; 20 (4) © Tatweer Co. for Educational Services; 200 (tr) © diplomedia/Shutterstock, (1) © Prostock-studio/Shutterstock, (2) © Image Source, (3)©Paul Bradbury/Age Fotostock, (5)©(c)©Comstock Images/Alamy; **202** (tr)©JetKat/Shutterstock, (1)©Maxx-Studio/Shutterstock, (2)@adempercem/Shutterstock, (3)@Oleksandr_Delyk/Shutterstock, (4)@Aeolos Image/Shutterstock, (5) Solve Ignacio Soto/Shutterstock; 203 (tl) Solve Ignacio Soto/Shutterstock, (tcr) Sam DCruz/ Shutterstock, (tr)©NAPA/Shutterstock, (bl)©Kenneth Sponsler/Shutterstock, (bcl)©iofoto/Shutterstock, (bcr)©Michael Mihin/ Shutterstock, (br)@arway/Shutterstock; 205 (tr)@gary718/Shutterstock, (c)@Slatan/Shutterstock, (cr)@Sabphoto/Shutterstock, (br)@Westend61/Image Source; 207 (tc)@Sascha Burkard/Shutterstock, (tr)@Alla-Berlezova/Shutterstock, (c)@Robert Asento/ Shutterstock, (cr)©Kenneth Sponsler/Shutterstock; 209 (1)©Iconotec/Glowimages, (2)©Iynx/iconotec.com/Glow Images, (3) © Comstock Images/Alamy, (4) © Comstock Images/Alamy, (5) © ImageState/Alamy, (6) © Shutterstock/prapass, (7) © vnlit/ Shutterstock, (8)©donatas1205/123RF, (9)©Shutterstock/Alexandr Zagibalov, (10)©Eugene Shapovalov/Shutterstock; **210** (1)@M Salem/Shutterstock, (2)@Hurst Photo/Shutterstock, (3)@GraphicsRF.com/Shutterstock, (4)@3DMI/Shutterstock; 211 (tr)@New Africa/Shutterstock; 212 (br)@Phovoir/Shutterstock; 213 (tr)@New Africa/Shutterstock; 215 (t)@Andrey Lobachev/ Shutterstock, (c)©Andrey Lobachev/Shutterstock, (b)©kesipun/Shutterstock; 220 (cl)©alexb09d4n/Shutterstock, (c)©Orca/ Shutterstock; 226 (tl)@sonya etchison/Shutterstock, (cl)@wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock; 227 (tr)@lcdpstock/Shutterstock, (cl)@Dejan Dundjerski/Shutterstock, (cr)@Andrey_Popov/Shutterstock, (br)@Alaettin YILDIRIM/Shutterstock, (br)@Alaettin YILDIRIM/Shutterstock; 229 (tr)©Vitalii Nesterchuk/Shutterstock, (1)©Andrey_Popov/Shutterstock, (2)©John Grummitt/ Shutterstock, (3)@Lisa F, Young/Shutterstock; 231 (I-r, t-b)@Tatweer Co. for Educational Services, (2)@John Grummitt/ Shutterstock, (3)@Shutterstock, Victor Maschek, (4)@Rahhal/Shutterstock, (5)@Sylvie Bouchard/Shutterstock, (6)@RossHelen/ Shutterstock; (1)@Hekla/Shutterstock, (1)@Ebtikar/Shutterstock, (2)@alexsol/Shutterstock, (2)@fotoinfot/Shutterstock, (3)©design56/Shutterstock, (3)©wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock, (4)©dariuszz/Shutterstock, (4)©Andrew Rafalsky/ Shutterstock, (5)@nevodka/Shutterstock, (5)@Aleks Gudenko/Shutterstock, (6)@Mega Pixel/Shutterstock, (6)@Dragon Images/Shutterstock, (7)@Dmitrij Skorobogatov/Shutterstock, (8)@Kolonko/Shutterstock; 236 (tr)@Delpixel/Shutterstock, (cr)@Africa Studio/Shutterstock; 239 (tr)@Jaros/Shutterstock, (cr)@WathanyuSowong/Shutterstock, (bl)@Elnur/Shutterstock, (br)@Mike_shots/Shutterstock; 240 (t-b)@Dimitris Leonidas/Shutterstock, (2)@Antonio Guillem/Shutterstock, (3)@Syda Productions/Shutterstock; 242 (I-r, t-b)@LeManna/Shutterstock, (2)@Dudarev Mikhail/Shutterstock, (3)@Vladimir Mucibabic/ Shutterstock, (4)@Photo_DDD/Shutterstock, (5)@GaudiLab/Shutterstock, (6)@Sergey Nivens/Shutterstock, (7)@Galyna Andrushko/Shutterstock, (8)©Ljupco Smokovski/Shutterstock; 245 (t-b)©BUY THIS/Shutterstock, (2)©KPG_Payless/ Shutterstock, (3)@Phovoir/Shutterstock, (4)@Jsnow my wolrd/Shutterstock, (5)@Maksym Poriechkin/Shutterstock, (6)@Minerva Studio/Shutterstock; 252 (tl)@diplomedia/Shutterstock, (cl)@alphabe/Shutterstock; 255 (tr)@Kzenon/ Shutterstock, (cr)@wavebreakmedia/Shutterstock.

Cover (bl)@adznano3/Shutterstock, (br)@kv naushad/Shutterstock.





